







T H E

# Art of Angling.

By R. BROOKES, M. D.

I N T W O P A R T S.

I. Containing an Account of Fish, and Fish-Ponds : A new Art of Fly-making : The new Laws that concern Angling : The secret Ways of catching Fish by Ointments, Pastes, and other Arts : Directions how to procure Baits, and for making all sorts of Fish-Tackle, with the surest Method of finding Sport, &c.

II. Of the great Whale, and Whale Fishery ; the devouring Shark ; the amphibious Turtle ; the luscious Turbot and Sole ; with Flying Fish, Sea-Devil, and other extraordinary Productions of the Sea. Likewise a natural History of the Inhabitants of the Salt Water, and the various Methods of Rock and Sea-Fishing.

I L L U S T R A T E D

With One Hundred and Thirty-five CUTS, exactly describing the different Kinds of FISH that are found in the Fresh or Salt Waters.

The Whole forming

A SPORTSMAN'S MAGAZINE ;

And comprising all that is curious and valuable in

The ART of ANGLING.

---

The FIFTH EDITION, with great IMPROVEMENTS.

---

*In flow'ry Meads, oh let me live !  
Where crystal Streams sweet Solace give ;  
To whose harmonious bubbling Sound,  
My dancing Float and Heart rebound.*

---

D U B L I N :

Printed for J. BEATTY, No. 32, SKINNER-ROW.  
M,DCC,LXXVIII.

F189.5\*

HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY

GIFT OF

DANIEL B. FEARING

30 JUNE 1915

---

---

T O

R I C H A R D   H E A T H,

Of Hatchlands, *in the County of Surry, Esq;*

S I R,

**T**HE Pleasure I enjoyed when I had the Honour of your Conversation in the Country, makes me now desirous of prefixing your Name to this Treatise, merely as a Testimony of Respect and Gratitude for Favours already received.

I now lay before you the Art of Angling; and am too well acquainted with your Disposition to favour every Thing that is designed for Information and Improvement, to despair of its meeting with a candid Reception. Besides the Study of Nature always has been, and always will be esteemed by the wisest Men an Entertainment worthy of the most rational Mind, and consequently no way unsuitable to the highest Rank; which I the rather take Notice of, lest it

A 2                      should

iv DEDICATION.

Should be thought that I offer you a disagreeable Present, or that I have employed my Time ill, in busying myself about Enquiries of this Sort.

It is not my Purpose to offend your Modesty by going into the usual Style of Dedications; however, I may just mention what will not lay me under the least Imputation of Flattery, That You are the Delight of all Companies where you happen to be, and are possessed of every Quality that constitutes a compleat Gentleman. This naturally puts me in Mind of the many agreeable Moments which I have lost by my Removal from your Neighbourhood, and which I cannot yet think of without Regret, especially since I learnt from you how to relish the serener Pleasures of Life, and to enjoy all the Advantages of a rural Retirement.

But I forget that I am talking to the Public as well as to you; I shall therefore add nothing else, but my sincerest Wishes for the Happiness and Prosperity of Yourself and Family; desiring that you would always believe me to be,

S I R,

*Your most obedient,*

R. BROOKES.



## The ANGLER's LIFE.

Tune, *The Banks of Indermay.*

## I

WHEN vernal *Airs perfume the Fields,*  
*And pleasing views the Landskip yields:*  
*The limpid Stream, the scaly Breed,*  
*Invite the ANGLER's waving Reed.*  
*The musing Swain what Pleasures seize!*  
*The talking Brook, the sighing Breeze,*  
*The active Insect's buzzing Wing,*  
*And Birds that tuneful Ditties sing.*

## II.

*At latest Eve, at early Dawn,*  
*The ANGLER quests the scented Lawn,*  
*And roams, to snare the Finny Brood,*  
*The Margin of the flow'ry Flood.*  
*Now at some Osier's wat'ry Root*  
*The CHUB beguiles, or painted TROUT;*  
*No Cares nor Noise his Senses drown,*  
*His Pastime, Ease and Silence crown.*

## III.

*Adieu, ye Sports of Noise and Toil,*  
*That Crowds in senseless Strife embroil;*  
*The Jockey's Mirth, the Huntsman's Train,*  
*Debauch of Health, and Waste of Gain.*  
*More mild Delights my Life employ,*  
*The ANGLER's unexpensive Joy.*  
*Here I can sweeten Fortune's Frowns,*  
*Nor envy Kings the Bliss of Crowns.*

M. B.

The

## The PLEASURES of ANGLING.

Tune, *All in the Downs, &c.*

## I

**A**LL in the fragrant Prime of Day,  
 Ere Phæbus spreads around his Beams,  
 The early ANGLER takes his Way,  
 To verdant Banks of crystal Streams.  
 If Health, Content, and Thoughtful Musing charm,  
 What Sport like Angling can our Cares disarm?

## II.

There ev'ry Sense Delight enjoys,  
 Zephyrs with Odours loads his Wing;  
 Flora displays ten thousand Dyes,  
 And varied Notes the Warblers sing.  
 If Health, Content, &c.

## III.

On the soft Margin calmly plac'd,  
 Pleas'd he beholds the Finny Brood  
 Through the transparent Fluid haste,  
 Darting along in Quest of Food.  
 If Health, Content, &c.

## IV.

The skilful ANGLER opes his Store,  
 (Paste, Worms, or Flies his Hook sustains,)  
 And quickly spreads the grassy Shore  
 With shining Spoils that crown his Pains.  
 If Health, Content, &c.

## V.

If some fierce Shower in Floods descends,  
 A gloomy Groves thick Shade is near;  
 Whose grateful Umbrage safe defends  
 'Till more inviting Skies appear.  
 If Health, Content, &c.

## VI.

*There blissful Thoughts his Mind engage,  
To crouded noisy Scenes unknown;  
Wak'd by some Bard's instructive Page,  
Or calm Reflections all his own.  
If Health, Content, &c.*

## VII.

*Thus whether Groves or Meads he roams,  
Or by the Stream his Angle tends;  
Pleasure in sweet Succession comes,  
And the sweet Rapture never ends.  
If Health, Content, and thoughtful Musick charm,  
What sport like Angling can our Cares disarm?*  
J. D



## The ANGLER'S SONG.

## I.

**A**S Things most lov'd excite our Talk,  
Some praise the Hound, and some the Hawk;  
Whilst those who chuse less rustic Sport,  
Tennis or some fair Mistress court:  
But these Delights I never wish,  
Nor envy, while I freely fish.

## II.

Who hunt, in Dangers often ride,  
Who hawk, oft lure both far and wide;  
Who game, shall frequent Losers prove;  
While the fond Wretch, allur'd to love,  
Is fetter'd in blind Cupid's Snare—  
My Angle breeds me no such Care.

## III.

No other Pastimes (thus employ'd)  
Yield us such Freedom while enjoy'd;  
All Recreation else, no less  
Than Mind and Body both possess.

My

My Hand, alone my Work can do  
So I can fish and study too.

## IV.

I love not angling (rude) on Seas,  
Fresh Streams my inclination please ;  
Whose sweet calm Course to Thought I call,  
And seek in Life to copy all :  
In Bounds (like theirs) I fain would keep,  
Like them would (when I break them) weep.

## V.

And when the timorous Trout I wait  
To take, and he devours my Bait ;  
How small, how poor a Thing, I find,  
Will captivate a greedy Mind :  
And when none bite, the Wise I praise,  
Whom false Allurement ne'er betrays.

## VI.

If (too intent on Sport) I fast,  
Good Fortune gives me rich Repast ;  
My Friend it serves me to invite,  
In whom I more than that delight :  
Who comes more welcome to my Dish,  
Than to my Angle was my Fish.

## VII.

Content, as well if nought I take,  
As use, of that obtain'd, to make,  
CHRIST thus was pleas'd, HIS Fishers when  
HE happier Fishers made of MEN.  
Where—(which no other Sport can claim).  
A Man may fish and praise his Name.

## VIII.

HIS first Attendance chose on Earth,  
Blest Fishers were of meanest Birth :  
And Fish (as sacred Records shew,  
Was HIS last-tasted Food below—  
I therefore strive to follow those,  
Whom, HIM to follow, He hath chose.

THE



THE  
ART of ANGLING.

---

*Of FISH in general.*

AS it is the Design in this DICTIONARY to give a particular Account of all the Fish which are either brought to our Markets, or caught in our Rivers or Ponds, it may not be improper first to give a description of such Properties as are commonly possessed by the watery Inhabitants because this will greatly contribute to make all that shall be said of them easily understood.

The first thing that occurs is their Shape or Figure, which always tapers a little at the Head, and qualifies them to traverse the Fluid which they inhabit. The Tail is extremely flexible, and is furnished with great Strength and Agility,  
B bend-



bending itself either to the Right or the Left, by which means it repels the Water behind it, and advances the Head and all the rest of the Body. It is commonly thought, that the Fins are the chief Instruments of Motion, but this is a vulgar Error, for the chief use of the Fins is to poise the Body, and to keep it steady, as also to stop it when it is in Motion. *Borelli*, by cutting off the Belly Fins of a Fish, found that it reeled to and fro, and was unable to keep itself in an upright Posture. When a Fish would turn to the left it moves the Fins on the right Side, when to the right it plays those on the left; but the Tail is the grand instrument of progressive Motion.

Most of their Bodies are cloathed and guarded with horny Scales, suitable to the Dangers they are exposed to, and the business they are to perform: these Scales we find moistened with a slimy Liquor, and under them lies, all over the body, an oily Substance, which, by its Antipathy to Water, supplies the Fish with Warmth and Vigour.

Fish are enabled to rise or sink in the Water by means of a Bladder of Air that is included in their Bodies; when this is contracted they sink to the Bottom, but when it is dilated they rise to the Top. That this is the true use of this Bladder appears from an Experiment made upon a Carp. This Creature was put into an Air-pump, and when the Air was pumped out of the Vessel, that which was in the Bladder of the Fish expanded itself to such a Degree, that the Carp swelled in an extraordinary Manner, and his Eyes started out of his Head, till at last the Bladder burst in his Body. The Fish did not die, but was thrown immediately into the Water where he continued to live a Month longer: However he never rose any more, but crawled along the Bottom like a Serpent.

The

The gills serve this Animal for respiration, and are a kind of lungs, which he opens for the reception of the Air: Their Mechanism is so contrived as to admit this element without any mixture of water. Through these passages the air evidently flows into the Bladder, and then the Fish ascends: but in order to sink he is obliged to contract this Bag; the Air then rises to the Gills, and is ejected, and the Fish descends with a rapidity proportionable to the quantity of ejected air. This motion may likewise be assisted by the action of the muscles, not to say that it is the most usual expedient; when these are expanded, the air of the Bladder dilates itself by its natural spring, and when they are contracted the air is compressed, and the Bladder will consequently shrink. Besides, Air is necessary to preserve the lives of Fish, for by what means soever the air is excluded from the Water, it soon proves fatal to the Fish that are contained therein.

A great number of Fish are furnished with Teeth, which are not designed for eating or chewing, but to retain their prey. These teeth are differently placed, according to the different manner of this Animal's feeding; in some they are placed in the Jaws, Palate, and Tongue; in others in their Throat; these last are called *Leather-mouthed Fish*.

The eyes of these Animals are flat, which is most suitable to the Element in which they live, for a protuberant eye would have hindered their motion in so dense a Medium; or by brushing through it, their eyes would have been apt to wear, to the prejudice of their Sight. To make amends for this, the crystalline humour is spherical in Fishes, which is also a remedy against

the refraction of the Water, which is different from that of the Air, and Animals that live in the Air, have the cryftalline lenticular and more flat.

All Fish, except the *cetaceous* kind, seem entirely divested of those parental pleasures and Sollicitudes which so strongly mark the Characters and Conduct of the more perfect terrestrial Animals. They do not use Coition; for though the Male sometimes seems to join bellies with the Female, yet as he is unfurnished with the Instruments of Generation, his only end by such an Action is to emit his impregnating Fluid upon the Eggs, which at that time fall from her. His Attachment seems rather to the Eggs than the Female; he pursues them often, as they float down along the stream, and carefully impregnates them one after the other.

All Fish have a peculiar Season to deposite their Spawn. They in general chuse the hottest months in Summer, and prefer such waters as are somewhat tepified by the rays of the Sun. They then leave the deepest parts of the Ocean, which are always most cold, approach the Coasts, or swim up the rivers of fresh Water, which are warm by being shallow. When they have deposite their burthens, they then return to their old Stations, and leave their Spawn, when come to Maturity, to shift for themselves. These at first escape by their minuteness and agility. They rise and sink much sooner than grown Fish, and can swim in much shallower Water. But with all these advantages, scarce one in a thousand survives the various Dangers that surround it; the very Male and Female that have given it Life are equally dangerous and formidable with the rest, for every Fish is the declared enemy of all it is able to devour,

Fishes

Fishes in general may be divided into those that have Lungs and those that have Gills, though they both serve for Respiration; of the first Sort are the cetaceous kind, by some hyperbolically called Sea Monsters; for they do not all deserve that Name. Those that respire through Gills may be subdivided into the cartilaginous, which are also viviparous; and those that produce Spawn. These last are distinguished by the Name of spinous; that is, that they are provided with small sharp Bones, to support and strengthen their Muscles; whereas the cartilaginous, such as the Scate and Thornback, have only a sort of Gristles, which are so soft that they are eaten by some. The spinous sort generate without Coition; instead of which the females dig holes in the bottoms of Rivers, Ponds and other watery places, wherein they deposite their Spawn; upon which the Male immediately after emits his impregnating Fluid, in order to render the Spawn prolific. However, this division is not strictly true; for there are some spinous or bony Fish which are viviparous, or bring forth their young alive; among which some think the Eel may be placed, though this is uncertain.

There are some Fish which produce large Eggs, after the manner of Birds, with the Yolk and White, that are hatched in their Bodies before they are excluded; and this is proper to the cartilaginous Kind. Others are oviparous, or bring forth a great a quantity of Spawn; which being a kind of little Eggs, are hatched by the natural warmth of the Water. The increase of these is almost incredible, for *Lewenhoeck* has computed, that there are no less than nine millions three hundred and forty-four thousand Eggs in a single Cod. Hence it ceases to be a Wonder,

that every Species is preserved, notwithstanding they are continually preying upon, and devouring each other. The flat-fish, in particular, conceal themselves in the mud, which they resemble in colour, till the spawning of other fish is over, and then they seize upon the Eggs, and feed upon them. If it was not for this practice, and the devouring of the Fry, the Ocean itself would not be large enough to contain the prodigious number of fish that would otherwise come to maturity.

Most fish are provided with a Tongue, and some, as the Carp, have none at all, but in its stead they have a fleshy Palate, which is accounted a delicious morsel among persons who are fond of such niceties. What use a Tongue is of to fish is not easy to determine, since it cannot serve to modulate their Voice, because they are entirely mute: nor does it serve to revolve the Food in their Mouths, for it is immoveable; neither can it assist them in mastication, for they swallow every thing without chewing: Nor yet is it likely to be the Organ of Taste, because it is gristly in all fish, except those of the cetaceous kind, and therefore does not seem adapted to perform an office of so exquisite a nature, unless in an obscure manner, which perhaps may be sufficient for their purpose.

Some fish have no Throat, their Maw or Stomach being placed next to their Mouths; but such whose Bodies are long and slender, as the Eel kind, have a Throat, though they are without Lungs.

Though the stomach of fish is endowed with no sensible heat, yet it has a wonderful faculty of digestion, since in those of the more voracious kind, it only dissolves great numbers  
of



of other Fish, but even Prawns, Crabs and Lobsters, which are covered with hard crusty Shells.

Below the Stomach in most Fish, and about the Pylorus, there are several Appendages, or blind Guts, but for what Purpose they serve is a Secret hitherto, unless they somehow or other assist Digestion, as *Ray* thinks.

The Hearts of such Fish as respire through their Gills, have only one Ventricle and one Auricle, but the latter is very large in proportion to the Heart, as are likewise the Veins in general to the Arteries. The Figure of the Heart is triangular.

Many Writers on Fish have affirmed, that none except those of the cetaceous Kind, have either Kidneys or Urinary Bladder; but this proves a Mistake, for it is hard to say whether there are any without them or not; however, it is certain that most are provided with them, and, as *Dr. Needham* observes, those whose Swimming-Bladder is double, or divided into two Lobes, have larger Kidneys than the rest, from whence the Ureters plainly descend to the Urinary Bladder, which lies at the Bottom of the Belly upon the straight Gut.

Besides these they are endowed with a Liver, Spleen, and Pancreas, in the same manner as Quadrupeds, and which probably serve for the same Uses.

The Sea carries off from the Lands which it washes, a Vitriol and Bitumen, that, like itself, being in a perpetual Motion, disperses and incorporates in such a manner with the smallest Particles of the Water, that no Filtrations, no Alembicks, nor any other Devices, how artful soever, have been able to purify and free it from its brackish Taste. It is in this nauseous and offensive Water, however, that the All-wise

Creator has thought fit to improve and bring to Perfection the Flesh of those Fish which the most Voluptuous prefer before the choicest Fowls. In an Element that produces nothing, it is impossible, one would imagine, that the Number or Fertility of the Inhabitants should be any thing considerable; yet what a prodigious Quantity of Muscles, Crabs, Lobsters, and other Fish of an enormous Size; what Piles of Oysters, whose Whiteness and Fat give a Keenneſs to the Appetite; what a Profuſion of Turbots, Flounders, Dabs, Burts, Plaice, and all the various Species of flat Fish, whose Flesh is so exceedingly admired, does it furnish us with? We observe, in the Season, whole Fleets of Ships freighted with Herrings; and at other Times Shoals of Mackarel and Whittings present themselves voluntarily before us upon the Coasts; insomuch that many Cities are supplied with a sufficient Quantity of them by the bare Capture of a single Day. Legions of Smelts and Flounders forsake the Salt Waters in the Spring, and begin to swim up the Rivers. Shads follow the same Track, and grow to their full Perfection in the fresh Water. Salmonſ continue till *August*, to enrich the Fishers, and regale the Public. Every Season furnishes us with fresh Delicacies, without the least Interruption of their usual Presents; such as Lampreys, Smelts, Soles, Thornbacks, and a vast Variety of other Fish, that adorn our Dishes, and gratify the nicest Taste. What a Delicacy, what a Profuſion of Proviſions do we receive from the Indulgence of this Element!

This very Delicacy, however, might poſſibly ſo enhance their Value, that none but the Rich could purchaſe them; or the Plenty might be ſo great, that the Corruption of the Whole, or the  
greateſt

greatest Part, might prevent their timely Consumption. But both these Inconveniencies are effectually prevented by a little Salt. Thus the Sea is lavish of her Stores, and at the same Time furnishes us with that which renders their Communication easy, and their Conveyance safe. We observe likewise in this Profusion of the Sea, a Precaution which enhances the Value of her Gifts, and proves an additional Blessing. Such Fish as are wholesome Food, and agreeable to the Taste, are exceedingly prolifick; but those, on the other hand, whose Flesh is unpalatable, or prejudicial to our Health, and whose monstrous Size renders them formidable to others, for the Generality bring forth their Young completely formed into the World, and seldom more than one or two at a Birth. The same Wisdom that has regulated with such Indulgence the Bounds of their Fecundity, keeps those at a wide Distance from our Shores which we have the least occasion for, and puts others into our Possession, which are of most Benefit and Advantage to us. Some Species are with us all the Year long, and others pay us an annual Visit in prodigious Multitudes. The exact Time of their Passage, and their peculiar Track, is well known, which are very advantageous Circumstances, though sometimes it may vary ten or fifteen Days, by Means of strong Winds or bad Weather. We may form an adequate Idea of other Fish of Passage from the Herrings and Cods. The former seem to have their principal Rendezvous between the Points of *Scotland*, *Norway*, and *Denmark*. From thence the *Danish* Colonists take their annual Progress, and, at different Seasons, cross the Channel: Their Voyage is performed with the utmost Exactness: Their Track is prescribed, and their March regulated. The whole

Body move at once; not one of them presumes to straggle, pillage, or desert. When the Body of their Army is once passed, not one of the same Species appears again till the Year ensuing. An infinite Number of Worms and little Fish are bred every Summer in the Channel, with which the Herrings regale themselves. They are a Sort of Manna, which these Animals never fail of picking up; and when they have cleared the Seas in the Northern Parts of *Europe*, they descend towards the South, to which they are attracted by the pleasing Prospect of a new Stock of Provisions.

We have but very few Cod-fish in our Seas. Their general Rendezvous is at the immense Bank before *Newfoundland*. There they are so numerous, that the Fishermen, who resort thither from all Parts, are constantly employed, and find their Labours attended with surprizing Success. One Man shall sometimes catch three or four hundred in a Day. When the Sustenance that attracts them is exhausted in these Parts, they disperse, and proclaim open War with the Whitings, which are their favourite Aliment. The latter fly before them; and their frequent Returns upon our Coasts, are principally owing to this hostile Chace.

Having mentioned the Wars of the Cods and Whitings, I must take Notice of one Circumstance, which reigns through all the species of Fish.

The Muscle lies in Ambuscade within the Mud; there she opens her Shells, and when a small unwary Crab presumes to creep in, she claps them close together in an Instant, and secures her Prey. The Oyster takes the same Measures to ensnare such little Fish as are not on their Guard. The Sole, and most Flat-fish lie concealed likewise in the Soil, to the Colour whereof their Backs bear a near resemblance, and observe, with the utmost  
Cir-

Circumspection, where the Females of large Fish sink commodious Lodgments for their Spawn, The Sole springs instantaneously from her Ambuscade, and regales herself with this delicious Food, which pampers her up, and gives her an exquisite Flavour. The small Soles, in their turn, are equally an agreeable Collation to the large Crabs; and when we open one of these latter, we seldom fail of finding a Sole or two in the Belly of it. You may form an Idea of the other Species by this. All the several Classes of living Creatures that breed in the Water, from the biggest to the least, are constantly in Action, and at War with each other. It is one continued Series of Artifices, Flights, Evasions, and open Violence. They pillage and devour one another, without Remorse or Moderation.

But tho' the Inhabitants of the Watery Regions are thus addicted to devour one another, the Almighty has taken proper Measures for the Preservation of Fish, by giving Strength to some, Activity and Circumspection to others, in order to save their Species from entire Destruction. Be the Number of Cods ever so great, that have been caught this Year, there will ever be sufficient to furnish us with as large a Quantity.

Tho' equivocal Generation is now universally exploded, yet it is certainly very wonderful to consider how some Places are stocked with Fish, especially if we may believe the Relations of some Authors of the greatest Credit. *Rondeletius* tells us of a Place between three Mountains, which had no Communication with any Spring, River, Pond, or Lake; however, it happened to be filled with Rain-water, that proceeded from plentiful Showers which had fallen some Days before he visited the Place, and in that short Time the  
Lake



Lake was stocked with Fish, among which there appeared Carp in great Abundance.

The most usual Food of Fish are Worms, Flies, and other Insects, and yet there do not want Instances of some who not only live, but grow to a large Size by Water only. The Wife of *Rondeletius* kept one of these Animals in a Glass Vessel, for three Years together, on nothing but Water, and might have kept it longer if it had not grown too big for the Vessel. Hence it appears, how much the Nature of the Water may contribute to the Goodness of the Fish. Others live upon Spawn, particularly the Flat-fish, as was mentioned before. This would contribute greatly to depopulate the Waters, if the Quantity of Spawn was not so exceeding great. Some devour the small Fry almost as soon as hatched; others when they are grown larger. Some live upon small Fish, such as the Minnow, Bleak, Gudgeon, Roach, Dace, and the like; others devour Shell-Fish, as Shrimps, Prawns, and small Crabs; others again, as the Pike and Eel, are so exceeding voracious, as to prey upon their own kind. Some few will feed upon Crumbs of Bread, Sea-Weeds, and the like, and it is well known to Sailors, that several Kinds of Sea-fish will follow the Ships hundreds of Leagues, on Purpose to swallow all the Nastiness that falls from them.

As to the Age of Fish, nothing certain can be pronounced, except that they are not so short-lived as the Ancients imagined; for Instance, a Salmon is six Years in growing before he is thought worthy of that Title in *Cheshire*, notwithstanding some have affirmed that he came to his full growth in a Year.

T H E

---

THE  
ANGLER'S DICTIONARY.

---

**A**NGLING. In all Kinds of Angling there are some general Rules to be observed, which will conduce greatly to the Angler's Diversion ; as not to angle in cold Weather, when the East or North Winds blow, for it is a common observation that the South Wind is most favourable to Anglers, except South West, and next to that the West. The usual Months for Angling are, from the beginning of *May* to the beginning of *September* ; when you angle before or after these times, the warmest part of the day is always best. On a hot Summer's Day, early in the Morning, and late in the Evening, will be most seasonable, and likewise dark, cloudy, gloomy Weather ; nor will a gale of Wind hurt your Sport, if it does not bluster too much. In all sorts of Angling, it will be best to keep out of the Fishes sight, and as far from the River's Bank as possible, unless the Water be muddy, and then you may come as near as you please. For the same reason the Angler's Cloaths should be of a grave dark Colour, and not bright and glaring, for that would fright away the fish. To invite the Fish to the place of Angling, it will be proper to cast in suitable food, such as boiled Corn, Worms, and Garbage ; but to keep them

to

together, it will be useful to throw in the Grains of ground Malt. But for Salmon and Trout, a composition of fine Clay, Blood and ground Malt, will be best.

N. B. After floods or rains, angle at Ground. When the Streams are beginning to clear, or after a shower that has not mudded them, but only beaten down the Flies and Gnats, or in the Shower, if you are inclined to stand it, angle with a fly.

*Improper times for ANGLING* are, in a strong East or cold North Wind. After a long drought. In the middle of Days that are excessive hot and bright, especially in muddy or clear shallow rivers. When there has been a white frost in the Morning. In Days of high Wind. Where they have been long washing sheep. Just after Fish have spawned. Upon rising of any sudden Clouds that prove to precede Rain. The Days following dark, clouded, or windy Nights. When Rivers, especially small ones, are pent up by flood-gates or Mills, and run low.

*The proper Times* are, in calm clear Weather. In a brisk South or West breeze? if you can find Shelter, no matter how high it be. When in the hottest Months it is cool and Cloudy. After floods, when the water fines, and is of a Whey-colour. After a hasty violent Shower has a little mudded and swelled the tide, especially for Ground-fishing. When a River is very much swelled, and it runs violently into any still Pit then by its sides; the mouth of any slow Creek running into it, and ends of Bridges where the Water runs calm and quiet, if not too deep. There is admirable Sport, when flashes are let down, or Mills set a going, if you follow the course of the Water.

BLAD-

**BLADDER-ANGLING.** This is as much for Diversion as any thing else. It is usually practised in large Ponds, with an Ox's Bladder, and a Bait fixed on an armed Hook, or a Snap-Hook. The quick Rising of the Bladder after it has been pulled under Water, never fails to strike the Fish as effectually as a Rod; and let him struggle as much as ever he will, the Bladder always gets the Victory at last.

**DIBBING, or FLY-ANGLING.** This is generally performed on the very Surface or Top of the Water, with a Line about Half the length of the Rod if the Day be calm, or with one almost as long as the Rod, if the Wind is so strong as to carry it from you. The Fly must always be in Motion, as near the Bank-side on which you are as may be thought convenient, unless you see a Fish rise within your Reach, and then it will be best to guide it over him, and if you can keep out of Sight by kneeling, or otherwise, you may be almost sure to take him. Sometimes the Bait is suffered to sink two or three Inches into the Water, but this is but seldom. You must always Dib in a clear Water, without either Lead or Float, and your Line strong, as by this Method you will usually lay hold of the largest Fish. When you Dib for Chub, Dace, &c. which is usually under some Tree or Bush, let your Fly drop into the Water as if it fell from the Boughs, then raise it to the Surface, and with one Finger of your Right Hand gently tap the End of your Rod, and when you have a Rise, give him Time that he may gorge the better. The best Place is a still Deep, on a hot calm Day, or in the Evening of a hot Day. If you Dib in a Stream,

Stream, it is best when the Water is clearing after a Flood, in which Case the Horse-Fly is the properest Bait.

**FLOAT-ANGLING.** In this the Line should be longer than the Rod by two or three Feet, and let the Pellet that is put upon it be neither so heavy as to sink the Cork or Float, nor so light as to hinder the smallest Touch from pulling it under Water, because that is the only Sign you have of a Bite. In Rivers it will be most proper to make Use of a Cork; but in standing Waters, a Quill may serve well enough.

**FLY-ANGLING.** Let the Rod be light, and the Line twice as long as your Rod, and very strong at Top, and go gradually taper, till you have only a single Hair at the Hook. You must contrive to have the wind on your Back, and the Sun, if it shines, to be before you, and to fish down the Stream; and carry the point or top of your Rod downward, by which means the shadow of yourself, and the Rod too, will be the least offensive to the fish, for the sight of any shade amazes the fish, and spoils sport.

In *March* or *April*, if the weather be dark, or a little windy or cloudy, the best fishing is with the Palmer-Worm, which, with the May-Fly, are the ground of all Fly-Angling. See the article **FLIES**.

Till you are a Proficient, every throw will go near to cost you a hook; therefore practise for some time without one; or get your flies dressed on silk-worm gut, and you will not easily smack them off.

The best times to use a fly are, when the river has been a little discoloured by rain, and is again clearing, or in a cloudy, breezy day.  
When



When the wind is high, chuse the still deeps, when small or none, the running streams, and use then the natural, in boisterous weather the artificial fly. In clear streams use a small fly, in less clear, one larger; a light-coloured fly in a bright day, a dark fly for dark waters, and an orange fly in muddy ones.

LEDGER-BAIT ANGLING is when the bait always rests in one fixed and certain place: to perform this, the line must be leaded as usual, with a bullet with a hole through, large enough to let the line easily draw through; and about nine inches above the hook, fix a shot to prevent the bullet from slipping down to the bait, and the float taken off. Within half a yard of the top of the line must be wrapped a thin plate of lead, about an Inch and a half long, and an Inch broad; this will serve to discover by its motion when you have a bite. You may either hold the Rod firmly in your Hands, or stick the thick end of it into the side of a bank.

RUNNING-LINE ANGLING is with one or two small Pellets of Lead to your Line without a float. The Lead should be just so much as will sink the bait to the bottom, and let the stream carry it down without much stopping or jogging. It is necessary to begin at the head of the stream, and let the bait drive downward as far as the Rod and Line will permit. It is good frequently to raise your bait a little from the Ground, and let it drop gradually again. The Line must be kept as strait as is consistent with letting the Lead drag on the Ground, and when there is a bite it will easily be felt, as well as seen by the point of the Rod and Line. When the fish bites, the Line should be slackened a little, that he may more easily

easily swallow the bait, and then you should strike gently and directly upwards. When your Lead is rubbed bright, you ought to cover it thinly with Shoemakers Wax, or change it. When you angle thus for Trout in small brooks, you frequently find very good holds grown over with wood; in such case, wrap your Line about your Rod till it comes to the Hook, and then you will easily get the top of your Rod under any bough; this done, loose as much Line as will reach the bottom, by turning your Rod the contrary way; keep the end of your Rod as high as you can till you have Line enough unwrapped, then suddenly let it drop into the upper part of the Hole, and if you have a bite, let him have liberty to gorge, and by this method you will frequently take good trout that you would not otherwise have come at.

**SNAP-ANGLING** is with two large Hooks tied back to back, and one smaller to fix your bait on. Your tackle must be very strong, and your Line not quite so long as your Rod, with a large cork-float, leaded enough to make it swim upright. Your bait must not be above four Inches long. As soon as ever you perceive the Cork to be drawn under water, strike very strongly without giving the fish time, otherwise he will throw the bait out of his Mouth. When you find he is hooked, master him as soon as you can, and with your Landing-Net under him get him out of the water. Some prefer a double-spring Hook, and put the bait on by thrusting the wire into the middle of its Side and through its Mouth, sewing up the Mouth afterwards.

**TOP-ANGLING** with a worm requires a Line without float or lead. The bait must be drawn up and down the stream on the top of the water.

This

This Method should only be used when the Weather is fine, and the Water clear ; it is sometimes successful in fishing for Trout and Salmon-smelts.

TRIMMER-ANGLING is very useful in a Meer, Canal, or Pond, and even in the still part of a River. This requires a round Cork, six Inches in Diameter, with a Groove on which to wind up your Line, except so much of it next the Hook as will allow the Bait to hang about Mid-water, and likewise so much of the other End as will reach to the Bank, or a Bush, where it is to be fastened. In this Position you may leave it to take its Chance, while you are Angling elsewhere. As soon as the Pike takes the Bait, and runs away with it, the Line unwinds itself off the Trimmer, without giving him the least Check. However, when you come to take up your Line, give it a Jerk, as in other fishing, and then your Prey will be more secure. This is a good Method of fishing in the Night.

TROWLING ; a Method of Angling chiefly used to catch a Pike. This requires strong Tackle, and no very slender Top, with a Ring fixed to it for the Line to run through. When you perceive a Pike lying in wait for his Prey, put three or four Rings, one bigger than another, made in this form, Co, upon a Gudgeon Rod ; and then put your Trowling-Line through the Loops of the Rings, and you will soon have Sport. The best Baits are Roach, Dace, or Bleak, newly taken, if the Water is any thing thick, or Day cloudy ; and nothing is comparable to a large Gudgeon, in a clear Day and stream : Great Baits invite him most, but little ones are most sure to take him. Your Line must be of Silk, at least two Yards next the Hook, and thirty Yards long ;  
there

there must likewise be a Reel to wind it upon. The Hook must be leaded, that the Head of the Fish may hang downward; there must be likewise two Links of Wire fastened to it. And because it is not very easy to thrust the Wire through the Body of the Fish, it will be proper to have a Fish-Needle, which passing through first, the Wire will readily follow it. Let the Point of your Hook stand near the Eye of your Bait, and then sew up its Mouth to keep it firm. The fin of the Tail should be cut off, and the Tail itself fastened to the Top of the Wire, otherwise the Bait will not lie smooth and even upon the Hook. It will be likewise proper to fasten the Bait at the Gills, with the help of a Needle and Thread; this done, make a Loop at the End of your Line, and fasten a Swivel to it, then put it through the Loop of your Ring, and hang your Bait on the Swivel. When you throw your Bait into the Water, take care to avoid Stumps and Weeds, for they will do your Bait as much Damage as the Bite of a Pike. Give your Bait time to sink; then slowly raise it, by Degrees, higher and higher, till you see your Bait; then let it sink again; and so on, drawing it gently towards you. If a Pike takes the Bait at first, it is across its mouth, for he seldom or never swallows it until he gets to his Harbour. Therefore as soon as you perceive you have a Bite, if he goes down the Stream with your Bait, it is commonly a small fish; if up, you may expect a large one; but take care not to check him, until he has had time to pouch the Bait.

TROWLING in PONDS is performed with a long Line, which will reach from one Side of it to the other: It should have as many armed Hooks and Baits, about three Yards asunder, as the length

length of the line will allow. This Method requires an Assistant, who must hold one end of it, and help you to keep it in a gentle Motion, until you find you have a Bite, and then strike with a Jerk the contrary Way to the Motion of the Fish.

ANGLING is described in general by Mr. POPE.

*IN genial Spring, beneath th' quiv'ring Shade,  
Where cooling Vapours breathe along the Mead,  
The patient Fisher takes his silent Stand,  
Intent, his Angle trembling in his Hand;  
With Looks unmov'd, he hopes the scaly Breed,  
And eyes the dancing Cork, and bending Reed.  
Our plenteous Streams a various Race supply,  
The bright-ey'd PERCH, with Fins of TYRIAN  
Die;*

*The silver EEL, in shining Volumes roll'd,  
The Yellow CARP, in Scales be-drop'd with Gold;  
Swift TROUTS, diversify'd with crimson Stains,  
And PIKES, the Tyrants of the watry Plains.*

The ANT-FLY is to be met with from the End of June to September. They are to be kept in a large Glass Bottle, with a Handful of the Earth, and another of the Roots of Grass from the Ant-Hills where they were bred. They are an excellent Bait for Roach, Dace, and Chub, if you angle with them under the Water about a Hand's Breadth from the Bottom.

ARON-BERRIES, or LIP-BERRIES, are of a lovely transparent Red, or Orange Colour; they are fit for Use, being ripe in July and August, and prove good Baits for Roach and Chub, especially the latter.

ASH-FLY. See OAK-FLY.

BACON, mixed with old Cheese and Turpentine, is an excellent Paste, and a good Bait for Chub, in Winter Months.

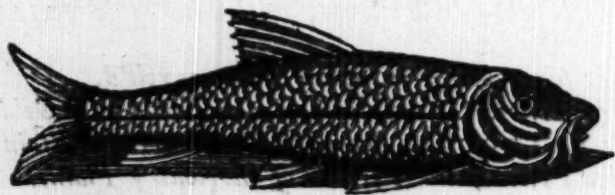
BAG.



**BAG.** A Line is said to Bag, when one Hair (after it is twisted) runs up more than the rest.

**BAITS.** To know at any Time what Bait Fish are apt to take, open the Belly of the first you catch, and take out his Stomach very tenderly: open it with a sharp Penknife, and you will discover what he then feeds on. The procuring of good Baits is not the least Part of the Angler's Skill: They are usually to be met with at the Shops where Fishing-Tackle is sold, but I shall hereafter particularly mention them in their Order.

### B A R B E L.



The **BARBEL** is a beautiful, well-shaped Fish. The Back is of an Olive Colour, the Belly Silver. It is speckled on the Back and Sides with small black Spots. His Make is long and roundish, and his Snout sharp. His Mouth is not large, but the upper Jaw is more prominent than the lower. He has four Barbs, or Wattles, from whence he derives his Name; two near the Corners of his Mouth, and two higher, near the End of the Snout.

The Barbel cannot well endure Cold, and therefore, in the Winter Time, he is sick and languid, but in the Summer clean and sound.

The Flesh is soft and flabby, and in no great Esteem. The Spawn is unwholesome, purging both upwards and downwards, and is thought, by some, to be little better than Poison. The Male

is much better than the female. Their principal Season is *September*.

Their Size is from a foot to a foot and a half long; the sort which are usually met with weigh about seven or eight Pounds; yet a person at *Staines* caught one of twenty-three pounds weight; his Bait was a bit of rusty Bacon.

He is bred in most Rivers; and the *Thames*, in particular, abounds with them. In the Summer he haunts the swiftest and shallowest Streams, where he lurks under the Weeds, and works and roots with his Nose in the Sand, like a Hog. Yet sometimes he retires to bridges, flood-gates, Locks, and Weirs, where the Waters are swift and deep.

He never feeds off the Ground, and will take any sort of Worm, Bits of Bacon, old Cheese, or new Cheese, if kept in a Linen Rag dipped in Honey two or three Days to make it tough. The Watermen, who attend on you when you fish in their Boats, sometimes provide Greaves, to be had at the Tallow Chandlers, for a Ground Bait over Night: Yet most commonly they use the same Worm that you bait with. They are a very subtle, strong fish, and struggle hard for their Lives, and will often pick off your Baits.

On the Morning of *August*, 23, 1771, Mr. *Warren*, the Perfumer, of *Marybone-street*, began to angle in *Walton Deeps*, and found such Sport, that he stopped before Noon, tired with fatigue, and found that he had caught 280 lb. weight of large sized Barbel. This Gentleman usually has the Deeps baited with worms over Night, and in the Morning fishes from a well Boat, with a perfumed Paste on his Hook. In *June*, 1772, when Mr. *Warren* came to the usual fishing hole, a brother Angler cried out, that he had had great Sport,

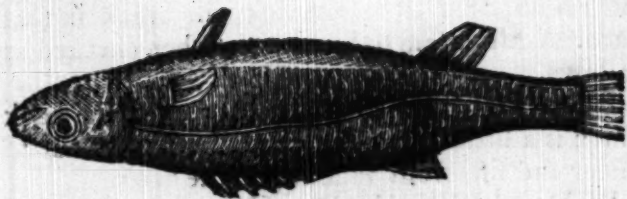
Sport, but had been devilish unlucky, for he had hooked a Sturgeon who had carried away his line. Well, (says Mr. *Warren*) have a little Patience, and I'll catch the Gentleman, which he did in about half an Hour, and it proved to be one of his old Acquaintance, a Barbel, which weighed 11 lb. but being out of Condition, Mr. *Warren* had punched a hole in his Tail, and turned him again into the *Thames*. This fish had then the Angler's Hook sticking in his Gills, and has since been twice caught by Mr. *Warren*, who as often has given him his Liberty.

His time of biting is early in the Morning, in *June*, *July*, and *August* till ten o'Clock, and from four in the Afternoon till Sun-set; but I prefer *September* and *October* before any other Months, because then they retire to the deep holes. In the Summer they come to the Shallows about Sun-set, where they may be easily taken with a scoured Lob-worm.

Your Rod must be very strong, with a tough whalebone at the end. You have no Occasion for a float, but must put a large bullet on the Line that your bait may lie ledger. You must have ten Hairs next the Hook, but the remaining part of your Line must be Silk. If you make use of a wheel, as in Trout-fishing, it will be so much the better.

The most famous Places near *London* for barbel Angling, are *Kingston-bridge*, and *Sheperton-Deeps*; but *Walton-Deeps*, *Chertsey-Bridge*, *Hampton-Ferry*, and the holes under *Cooper's-Hill*, are thought to be in no wise inferior. You may likewise meet with them at all the Locks between *Maidenhead* and *Oxford*.

## B A S S.



The Bass, from its Greediness, sometimes grows to the Length of a Yard and a Half ; yet, according to some, they are thought to be of a large Size when they weigh fifteen pounds. They are shaped pretty much like a Salmon. The Colour on the Back is of a dark dirty blue ; on the Belly Silver. When young they have black spots on the Back and lateral Lines, which, as they increase in bulk, quite vanish. The Scales are of a middling size, thick and adhere very closely. The mouth is large, and full of small teeth. In the palate there is a triangular Bone, and there are two more in the Throat. The tongue is broad, slender, and rough, there being a rough Bone in the middle. The Eyes are large, and of a Silver Colour, with dark cloudy Spots ; a small Circle next the Pupil is Yellow.

It is a very voracious Fish ; and yet the flesh is of a good flavour, and very wholesome.

They will live either in the Sea, Rivers, or Ponds : but the Sea Bass are best, and next to them are those that are taken in the mouths of large rivers.

The way of catching them is with nets. Sometimes they are caught with an angle in fishing for Mullet.

**BAWK.** A knot in a hair or link of a Line, occasioned often by the twisting of an Eel, and if not rectified in time the link will break in that place. A fish is said to be balked, when checked as he bites.

**BEARD.** The Beard is that part of the hook which is a little above the point, projected out to hinder the fish from slipping off the hook.

**BED and BEDDING.** Hairs are said to bed well, when they twist kindly, so that the link is equally round in every part. Bedding is the substance of the body of an artificial fly. Eels are said to bed, when they get into the Sand or Mud in large quantities.

**BEE.** The black ones that breed in clay Walls, at the top, and the humble Bees at the bottom, which breed in long grass, are good baits for the Chub.

## B L E A K.



A very small fish scarcely ever attaining to be six inches long. His body is covered with thin silver scales, which easily come off. He is of a slenderer and flatter make than a Chub, and his head is proportionably less. He has large Eyes, and the lower part of the Iris is spotted with red. The inside of the mouth is like that of a Carp, and provided in the same manner. There are none in the *Mersey*.

They are to be met with in great plenty in many other Rivers, and are reckoned to be chiefly  
in



in season in Autumn. It spawns in *March* and recovers its strength in three weeks time.

The flesh is sweet, nourishing and pleasant, but little sought after because of the diminutive size of the fish.

The best baits for him in the cold months are Gentles and small red-worms, and in summer you may catch great numbers with an artificial Ant-fly, or very small Gnat. There is no better sport than whipping for Bleaks, in a boat or on a bank in the swift water, in a summer's evening, with a hazle top, about five or six feet long, and a line twice the length of the Rod. Point your hook with a small Gentle.

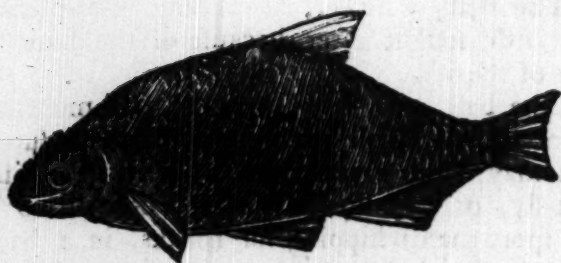
As this fish is always changing its situation, and seems to be ever restless, and ever in motion, the best method for angling for him is with a *Pater-noster* Line; that is, a line with half a dozen or more hooks, tied to the main Line, about three or four inches above one another. He will take your bait wherever he meets it.

BOBBING. See EELS.

BRAN from Wheat is very proper to put the small fishes in, such as are designed as baits for larger fishes.

BRANDLINGS are a fine red Worm streaked with yellow, and are to be met with in old Dunghills near a jakes, and are as good a bait for most sorts of fish as any used, and have a smell very peculiar to themselves, and when wounded with a hook, a yellow Liquid springs from the Wound. See WORMS.

## B R E A M.



The BREAM is a broad flat fish, with a small head and sharp snout.

The flesh of the bream is in no great esteem, and yet makes no bad dish, if well cooked. Those who would be thought Critics in good-eating, prefer the tale of a Pike, the head of a Carp, the back of a Tench, and the middle part of a Bream.

They breed both in Rivers and Ponds, but delight chiefly in the latter; for which reason they are never found in swift, rapid streams, but only in such parts of the River as most resemble standing waters, with muddy or clayey bottoms; the *Mole* in *Surry*, as far as experience reaches, is the best stocked with this fish of any river in *England*, but in the *Thames* there are very few. They swim in a herd as tho' they loved society, and at least fifty brace together have been seen at *Esber Bridge*.

They seldom grow to such a size, according to *Baltnerus*, as to weigh above four or five pounds; yet *Gesner* tells us he saw one that was a yard long, and two feet broad; but however that be, we have reason to believe, they sometimes weigh ten or twelve pounds.

They

They spawn in *May*, and are in the highest season in *March* and *April*, but they eat well in *September*.

They naturally feed upon slime, weeds, and dirt; but will take any sort of Paste, the brood of bees or wasps, flies under water, and Cod baits. But a short well scoured marsh-worm, or a large red worm, will prove most successful, or the tail of a well scoured dew-worm, or two or three large brandlings.

They bite best when there is a breeze of wind, and require a great deal of beating to keep them together. When the water is rough, your bait must be placed within a foot of the bottom. The likeliest place to meet with them is in the deepest and broadest part of a river, early in the morning, and from three or four in the afternoon till Sunset, when the weather is warm. They bite very slow, and the larger they are, the slower. As soon as you have struck one, he will immediately make to the bottom, and stay there some time; if he stays too long, give him a gentle touch, and he will immediately rise, and give two or three strong tugs; but when once you have turned him, he will soon yield.

The best method of Angling for him is this: seek a shallow sandy bottom that leads to a deep Hole; then throw into the shallow part of the Stream four or five handfuls of Marsh-worms cut into pieces, which will soon drive down into the Hole. Use a long rod, and of good strength, with a line proportionable; a small hook and no float. The hook must be tied to *India Grass*, on which put a cut shot six inches from the hook, and next to that a small bullet. The use of the shot is to keep the bullet from slipping lower.

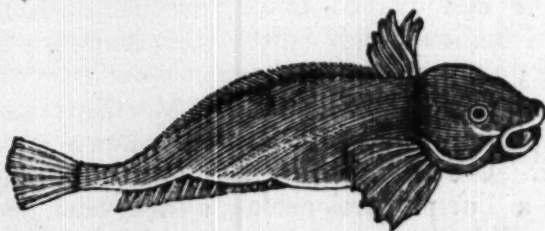
This being done, bait your hook with a short well-scoured Marsh-worm, throw it into the shallow, and the stream will drive it into the hole. By this method you may catch more in two Hours than you can well carry away.

Another method often attended with success: seek a deep hole near the bank, plumb the depth over night, and bait it at the same time with Grains well squeezed, and mixed with blood. In the morning early visit the place again, and take your stand out of sight; bait your hook with a large red worm, and then drop it gently into the hole. With these precautions, you will find sport. But remember always when you have occasion to plumb the depth of a place the night before, to take notice at your return, whether the water be risen or fallen, and make an allowance accordingly.

You may have very good sport, if you bait with chewed white bread, and angle with gentles, or the brood of wasps, but then you are not to use so long or strong a Rod, or line, and a smaller hook.

BROGLING. See EELS.

BULL-HEAD, or MILLER'S-THUMB.



The BULL-HEAD is a small fish of about four or five inches long; is a good bait for Pike, Perch, Eel, or large Trout.

It

It is found in brooks and gravelly rivers, where they lie hid like a loach under stones, and such like places.

They are a sweet fish, and very agreeable to the taste, and may be taken with any bait, their mouths are so large; but they are most fond of a red worm.

BUTT. The stock of a rod.

CADIS, or COD-BAIT. See WORMS. An excellent bait for trout.

## C A R P.



The CARP grows sometime to the length of a Yard and a half, and a proportionable thickness. In 1739, a pretty large one was caught in the *Thames*, near *Hampton Court*, which weighed thirteen pounds. The colour of this Fish, especially when full grown, is yellowish; the scales are large, the head short, and like that of a tench; the Mouth is of a middle size; the Lips fat, fleshy, and yellow. It is without teeth, but there is a triangular bone in the Palate, and two other bones in the throat, which serves for the same purpose. On the upper lip, near the corner of the mouth, are two yellow appendages, which may be called Mustachios, from their situation. The fins are large; the tail is broad, a little forked, and of a reddish black. The lateral line is straight, and passes through the middle of each side.

It has no tongue, but in the room thereof



nature has provided a fleshy palate, which being taken out of the mouth looks like a tongue, and some persons pretend to be positive it is one.

Some imagine it is only the small Carp that are the Breeders, but this is a mistake. A Gentleman in *Cheshire* cleansed his moat, and stored it with large Carp, imagining as the larger sort did not breed, they would feed very well: but in a very small time, the moat was all alive with the Carp spawn.

They spawn several times in a year, but the principal are in *May* and *August*, in which months they are lean and insipid, and consequently out of season. The Females drop their spawn as they swim along, and are generally followed by thirteen or fourteen males, who impregnate it as it falls, yet a great deal of it perishes. They are in highest request in *April*. *Willoughby* affirms the largest weigh about twenty pounds.

Some Authors of note have affirmed, that Carp have been often found in ponds wherein they were never known to be put: but in England we have not been so lucky as to find it true, for there were none of this kind of fish in all the Island, before they were brought into it by *Leonard Mascal*, about a hundred and sixty years ago, as he himself tells us in his treatise of fishing.

One thing observable in a Carp is, that it lives the longest out of the water of any other fish; and Mr. *Durham* assures us, that in *Holland* they hang them up in cellars, or other cool places, in a small net, full of wet moss, with only their heads out, and feed them with white bread soaked in Milk for many days.

The flesh of the river Carp is much better than that of the pond, and in general it is more or less wholesome, according to the nature of the water in which they are bred, and consequently muddy  
stinking

stinking Ponds produce the worst fish. It is soft, insipid, and not altogether free from viscidty, but your curious Eaters value it chiefly for the palate, or tongue, as they call it.

The River Carp is not fond of a rapid stream, but delights in a still deep water, with a marly or clayey bottom, especially if there be green weeds, which he loves exceedingly.

A Carp exercises the Angler's patience as much as any Fish, for he is very sly and wary. They seldom bite in cold weather, and in hot, a Man cannot be too early or too late for them. Yet when they do bite, there is no fear of their hold.

Proper baits are the Red-worm in *March*, the Cadew in *June*, and the Grasshopper in *July*, *August*, and *September*. But a recent discovery has proved a green Pea to be a bait inferior to none; if not the best of all; and that the best method to prepare them for use, is by half-boiling a sufficient quantity, and covering them with melted butter.

In hot Weather, he will take a Lob-worm at top, as a trout does a fly: Or, between the weeds, in a clear place, sink it without a Float, about eight Inches in the water, with only one large shot on the Line, which is to be lodged on the Leaf of some Weed: then retire, keeping your Eye upon the shot, till you see it taken away, with about a foot of the line, and then you may venture to strike; but keep him tight, and clear of the Weeds. Great numbers of Carp have been taken this way.

In Ponds, the best method is to throw six or eight slices of bread, to be carried with the wind and in a short time, it is probable, you will see many Fish feeding on it: if not, crumble a little very small, and cast it in where the slices rest; which will be a means to make them find the

pieces at top, which when you have suffered them to feed on, take a very long rod, strong line, middle sized hook, and one shot fixed just above the hook, and bait it with about the size of a large horse bean of the upper crust of a rasped *French Roll*, and you may pick out what size and quantity you please, by dropping your bait before the largest fish, as he is feeding on the slices at top. This is a sure means of getting sport, and but little known.

As before observed, this Fish is very cautious, and therefore your float must be small, and you must be sure to keep out of sight. And because when hooked he struggles in a violent manner, you must take care that your tackle be very good and strong, otherwise he will break from you.

When you have found a place which you think a likely harbour for Carp, you should plumb your ground over night, in order to find the depth of the water. Likewise at the same time bait the place with small bits of conjealed blood, boiled Malt, Wheat, or Rye, mixed with bran.

The next morning early, repair to the place as gently as you can, taking care, as said before, to keep out of sight; when you have a bite, let the float sail away before you strike, and then do it strongly and the contrary way to the motion of the float, and there will be less danger of pulling the bait out of the fishes mouth. When you have hold of him, if your tackle be good, you need not fear losing him, for he seldom or ever breaks his hold; and, if possible, prevent him stretching your line along his back, lest he cuts it with his saw-fin, which is on his back.

When you angle for a Carp, you ought not to forget your landing-net, which is by much the safest way of taking him out; otherwise play the  
Fish

Fish till you draw it to the shallows, where you may fix your Rod upright in the ground at a proper distance from the river, and, putting both your hands under the fish, throw it on the shore.

If you are desirous of angling with a paste, the following is as good as any. Take fine flower, a bit of lean raw Veal, a little Honey, and Cotton-Wool sufficient to keep the ingredients together, and beat them in a mortar to a paste. Or white Bread mixed with Cotton-Wool, and worked into paste with some of the water where you are fishing, is not a despicable bait. Carp will take red Currants, green Figs, or almost any sort of bait. When you fish with a Grasshopper you must take off its wings, and let it sink into the water without lead or float. Gentles, two upon a Hook, and throw in chew'd white Bread, is a good method to angle for Carp, especially in a pond.

Some farther particulars relating to Carp will be found under the article FISH-Ponds. At present we shall only add the manner how to make this fish as good a dish as can be set before a prince.

Take a Carp, alive if possible, scour him, and rub him clean with water and salt, but do not scale him; then open him, and put him, with his Blood and Liver, into a small Kettle; then take Sweet-marjoram, Thyme, and Parsley, of each half an handful, a sprig of Rosemary, and another of Savoury, bind them into two or three small bundles, and put them to your Carp, with four or five whole Onions, twenty pickled Oysters, and three Anchovies. Then pour upon your fish as much Claret Wine as will only cover him, and season your Claret well with Salt, Cloves, Mace, and the rinds of Oranges and Lemons; cover your pot, and set it on a quick fire till it be sufficiently boiled; then take out the Carp, and lay it with  
the,

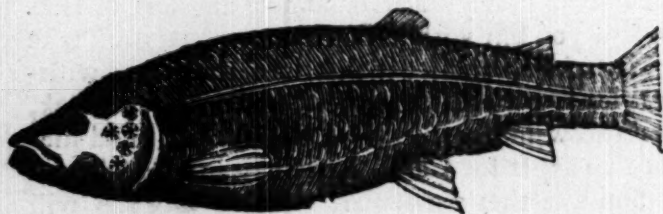
the broth into the dish, and pour upon it a quarter of a pound of fresh Butter melted, and beaten with half a dozen spoonfuls of the broth, the yolks of two or three Eggs, and some of the herbs thred: garnish your dish with Lemons, and so serve it up.

Dr. T.

CATERPILLAR, or PALMER-FLY, or WORM, is a good bait for a Trout.

## C H A R S.

### 1. *The GILT-CHAR.*



The Latin Writers call this *Carpio Lacus Benaci*, because they imagined it was only to be met with in that particular lake; but it has since appeared to be the same fish with our Gilt-Char, which is bred in *Winander-Meer*, in the county of *Westmoreland*. It is proportionably broader than a Trout, and the belly is more prominent, but its length, when greatest, never exceeds twelve Inches. The scales are small, the colour of the back is more lively than in a Trout, and is beautified with black spots; the belly and sides beneath the lateral line, are of a bright silver colour; the Scull is transparent, and the Snout blueish. It has Teeth in the lower Jaw, on the Palate and the Tongue; the Swimming-Bladder is extended the whole length of the back, and the Gall-Bladder is large.

The flesh of the Gilt-Char is red, and is accounted so very delicious among the *Italians*, that they



they say it excells all other Pond or Sea-fish whatever, and they esteem the Nature of it to be so wholesome, that they allow sick Persons to eat it.

*Winander-Meer*, as was before observed, is the only Place in *England* where the Gilt-Char, is found; it is a Lake, according to *Camden*, ten Miles in length, and in some Places exceeding deep, therefore they are only taken in the winter time, when they go into the Shallows to spawn.

2. *The RED CHAR, or TORGACH.*



The RED CHAR is the *Umbla Minor* of *Gesner* and other Authors, and is known in *Wales* by the Name of *Torgoch*. The body of this fish is of a longer and more slender Make than that of a trout, for one of about eight inches long was no more than an Inch and an half broad. The back is of a greenish, olive, spotted with white: the belly, about the breadth of half an Inch, is painted with red, in some of a more lively, in others of a paler Colour, and in some, especially the female, it is quite white: the Scales are small, and the lateral Lines straight. The Mouth is wide, the Jaws pretty equal, unless the lower be a little sharper and more protuberant than the upper; the lower part of the fins are of a vermillion Dye. The Gills are quadruple, and it has teeth both in the jaws and on the tongue; in the upper jaw there is a double row of them. The Swimming-bladder is like that of a trout; the Liver is not divided into Lobes; the gall-bladder is large,  
the

the Spleen small and blackish, the heart triangular, and the Eggs of the Spawn large and round.

The flesh is more soft and tender than that of a Trout, and when boiled can scarcely be allowed to be red. It is in the highest Esteem where known, and in *Wales* is accounted the chief Dish at the tables of people of fashion.

The only place in *England* where this fish is taken, is *Winander-Meer*; but in *Wales* they are to be had in five different places, namely *Llanberis*, *Llin-Umber*, *Festiniog*, and *Bettus* in *Carnarvonshire*, and near *Cafageddor* in *Merionethshire*. In this last county they are smaller than in the former, and are taken in *October*; but in *Carnarvonshire*, in one of the Lakes, they are caught in *November*, in another in *December*, and in the third in *January*, and when the fishing in one ends they begin in another.

They swim together in shoals, and though they appear on the surface of the water in the Summer-time, yet they will not suffer themselves to be taken either with the Angle or with Nets. Therefore the only season for fishing is when they resort to the shallow parts of the Lake, in order to spawn. At these times they set Trammel-nets baited, and leave them for whole Days and Nights, into which the fish enter of their own accord.

Some have doubted whether the *Welsh* and *English* fish are of the same Kind or not; but Mr. Ray thinks there is no Room to make it a doubt. The *Welsh* Name *Torgoch*, signifies a red Belly, which distinguishes the red Char properly enough. The gilt Char is, indeed, a quite different Species, and is above twice as small as the Red. The Belly of the former is of a silver colour, the flesh is red, and the Back is spotted with

with black ; whereas the belly of the other is red, the flesh white, and the Spots on the back white likewise. And though some fishermen say they only differ in Sex, and would have the red to be males, and the white females, yet it is as plain as can be, that they are of a distinct Species ; and notwithstanding the red are so large, the white are more valuable, and the flesh is more delicate ; these of this *Meer* are only taken in the winter-time, as well as those in *Wales*, for in Summer they will get over the tops of the Nets, and make their Escape. Dr. *Leigh* affirms, that the Char is found in *Conington-Meer* in *Lancashire*, which, from what he says of the size, must be the Red Char.

CHEESE. See BARBEL and CHUB.

CHERRIES and BERRIES, are baits for the Trout and the Chub.

### CHUB, or CHEVIN.



The CHUB is of a longer Make than a Carp, and has a larger and flatter Head than a Dace. The back is of an obscure Green, like an unripe Olive.

It is bred in Rivers, and delights to abscond in holes, and under the Shade of trees in a clayey or sandy bottom, where cattle come to dung in fords in hot weather. They generally swim in Drove, and keep to one residence like the barbel, especially if there is plenty of wood. Some have been met with that have weighed eight or nine Pounds.

They

They spawn in *May*, in sandy or gravelly Places, and in the very midst of the stream. They are most in season in the spring, while they are full of Spawn.

In *August*, and in the cooler Months, a yellow paste made of the strongest Cheese, and pounded in a Mortar with a little Butter, and so much Saffron as being beaten small will turn it to a Lemon colour, is a very good Bait. In the Winter Months the Chub is accounted best, it being observed that the forked bones are then lost or turned into a kind of Gristle, especially if he be baked. Some make a Paste for this Season of Cheese and Turpentine. He also will bite at a Minnow, as well as the Trout. But take this for a rule in Chub-fishing, that in hot Weather he is to be angled for towards the Mid-water, or near the top; and in colder weather near the bottom. And if you fish for him near the top, with a Beetle or Fly, be sure to let your Line be very long, and to keep out of Sight. The Spawn of this fish is excellent Meat; and the Head of a large Chevin, the throat being well washed, is the best part of him.

The flesh is white, soft, and insipid, and is but in very little Esteem among the Generality.

The Chub is fond of a very large Bait. In the Summer at Mid-water, five or six Cabbage, Nettle, or Cattle Dock Grubs, or a Mixture of all or any of the above, mixt with Flies, are very good Baits.

He commonly swims in Mid-water, and sometimes at the top, and is therefore best taken by dibbing. From the beginning of *May* to *September* you may angle for him before the Sun rises till Nine, and in *June*, *July*, and *August*, from Five till Dark, and with the white Moth all the Night over;

over; but in winter he lies lower, and then you may fish for him at the bottom in the middle of the day, with new Cow Brains. Some people will chew and spit them into the hole where they fish, but if you can mix them very small in a cup with a little water, and throw a small quantity in at a time, you will have sport, if you bait with the same; this, and the Spinal Marrow of an Ox, is the very best winter bait.

They will take almost any bait, as the Brains of Butchers Meat dried, and cut into small pieces; all sorts of Worms, Gentles, the brood of Wasps, Blackberries, Dewberries, new Cheese, Grasshoppers, black Snails with their Bellies slit, and all sorts of Paste.

*August 1770*, whilst Mr. *Warren* of *Marybone Street*, was fishing for Gudgeons, after having raked the ground, in about three hours he hooked a fish which broke his hold; in a swim or two he hooked another, which did the same; in a very few swims he hooked a third, which broke his Tackle; on which he left off fishing; and next morning returned to the same place, where he took eighty-three Chubs, the least weighing two, and the largest six pounds. The second day he was broke three times, but caught a fish, having in his Mouth one of the Hooks and the piece of Line he had before lost.

In Dabbling, the Chub will take a black Ant-Fly, small Butterflies with the great wings cut off, Oak-Worms, Ash-flies, green Caterpillars, and the Cod-Bait; in short, there is scarce any thing comes amiss to him.

It is but a dead-hearted fish, and when once turned yields presently. But yet you must master it as soon as you can, because when he is hooked he does not make to the middle of the stream, but



but to the banks, which may endanger your Tackle.

When you throw your bait into the water they fly swiftly from it, but return immediately to see what it is, and, if they like it, they swallow it without hesitation, if you keep yourself out of sight.

This fish will afford you good sport if you do as follows. Go to one of their holes, where, in most hot days, you may find a number of them floating near the top of the water. Get two or three Grasshoppers as you go over the Meadows, and place yourself secretly behind a Tree, remaining as free from motion as possible. Put a Grasshopper upon your Hook, and let your Hook hang a quarter of a yard short of the water: To which end you must rest your Rod on some bough of a Tree. It is likely the Chub will sink down towards the bottom of the water at the first shadow of your Rod, they being the most fearful of fishes, and apt to do this if but a Bird flies over them, and makes the least shadow on the water: But they will presently rise up to the top again, and there lie soaring till some shadow frights them afresh: When they lie thus upon the top of the water, fix your Eye upon the best Chub you can single out, and move your Rod gently towards him. Let your bait fall easily upon the water three or four Inches before him, and he will infallibly take it, and you will be as certain to catch him; for he is one of those Leather-mouthed fishes, of which a Hook scarce ever loses its hold: But be sure to give him play enough, before you offer to take him out of the water.

When a Grasshopper cannot be found, a black Snail, with his Belly slit, to shew his White, or a piece of soft Cheese, or any sort of natural Flies, will usually do as well.

When

When you angle for him with a fly, let it be a very large hackle, and point your hook with four or five large Gentles, or Botts ; cast your Line, which ought to be fourteen or fifteen Yards long, across the Stream, and let the Current carry it down, as they will take a Fly much better a little under Water than at top. When you see your Line draw, strike pretty smart. Your Rod should be six Yards, and not too slender.

A small Lamprey is no bad bait for a Chub.

CLAP-BAIT, or BOTT, a whitish Maggot, always to be found under a Cow-turd ; and a bait for Chub, &c.

COCK. A Float is said to cock well, when it swims upright in the water, as it ought to do.

CONGER. A Sea-Eel, often taken in the *Severn*, near *Gloucester*.

CRICKETS. 1. The HOUSE-CRICKET, is a good bait for Chubs, if you dib with it, or permit it to sink within the water. 2. The WATER-CRICKET, or CREEPER, is an excellent bait for a Trout in *March* and *April*, or sometimes in *May* in some Rivers. They are found under Stones that lie hollow in the Water, and you may fish with them within half a foot or a foot of the bottom. Others let thair bait drag on the ground ; and other good Anglers affirm, that if you dabble with it in the streams about Noon, on a Sunshiny-Day, two or three Hours, in the Month of *April*, for Trouts, it will prove a murdering Bait. It is always to be used in a clear Water, and is to be found only in very stony Rivers, not in those that calmly glide on Sand and Champaign Grounds. These Creepers always turn into Stone-flies about *May-Day*.

DACE.

## D A C E, or D A R E.



The DARE is not unlike a Chub, but proportionably less; his body is more white and flatter, and his tail more forked. He is not so broad as a Roach, and is a Leather-mouthed fish.

He breeds almost in all Rivers, and generally lies near the top of the water in Summer. He is a very brisk and lively fish, and swims swiftly like a Dart, from whence he derives his Name.

The flesh of the Dare is sweet, soft, and of good nourishment, but is in no great Esteem.

They spawn in *February* and *March*, and are fit to eat in *April* and *May*; but their highest Season is from *September* to the latter End of *February*.

They delight in gravelly and sandy bottoms, and the deepest part of the River under the shade of trees, or Dock Leaves.

They are a very simple fish, and will often bite when you least desire it. However, their darling bait is a Gentle at the bottom, and a small fly at the Top. In the Summer-Months an Ant-fly is best. They will likewise take any Paste as well as all sorts of small worms.

Angle for him with a very slender Rod, a Line of single Hairs from top to the Hook, which is to be a very small one; one small shot, a float made of two Sea-gull Quills, cut within about half an Inch of the feather, and thrust one of the open Ends into the other, and then whipt fast with fine waxed Silk. This makes the very best float, and is drawn under the water, without danger of pricking

pricking the fish. When you are so provided, get some white Bread, and chew it, and throw it into the water in small pieces, and bait with Gentles, you will have good sport; or you may fish with boiled Malt, and bait with Grains, and you will frequently catch Chub, Bream, and many other sorts of fish. He will likewise take all Sorts of Flies very well. If you point your Hook with one Gentle in the spring, he take an Earth-bob very well.

If you angle where two Mill-Streams are going at one and the same time, let it be in the Eddy between the two streams: First make use of your Plummet; and if the water be deep, you must angle within a foot of the bottom, and perhaps you will find but little sport. But if it proves to be shallow, that is, about the depth of two feet, or not exceeding three, then bait your Hook with three large Gentles: Use a Cork-Float, which ought not to be a foot and a half from the Hook, and have a quick Eye to strike at the very first bite; for if there be any large Dace in the Mill-Pool, they will resort to the Eddy between the two streams.

DIBBING. See ANGLING.

DOCK-WORM. This Worm is found by plucking up the Plants, and washing their Roots from the Earth. In their Fibres are little cases of a red or yellow colour; which, upon being opened with a Pin, will discover the Worm. They are kept in Bran, like the Gentle. It is a good bait for the Bream, Grayling, or Trout, and Perch particularly.

DRABLING, is a method to catch Barbels. Take a strong line of six yards, which, before you fasten it to your Rod, must be put through a piece of lead, that if the fish bite, it may slip to  
and

and fro, and that the water may something move it on the ground; bait it with a pretty large Lob-Worm well scoured, and so by its motion the Barbel will be enticed into the danger without suspicion. The best places are in running water near Piles, or under Wooden Bridges, supported with Oaks floated and slimy.

**DRAG.** A piece of Iron, with four Hooks placed back to back, to which a Line is fastened; useful to the Angler, only to save an intangled Line, or when it slips off his Rod.

**DUB.** To dub is to make an Artificial Fly.

**DUBBING**, the best is from Spaniels Hair, Hogs Downdyed all Colours, a West India Squirrel, Sheeps Feet, Bears and Camels Hair, the Heart of an Ostrich, Peacock, or Wing Feather of a Turkey. The skin of the belly of an Urchin or Hedgehog, has very good Dubbing upon it.

**EARTH-BOBS**, or **GRUBS**. See **WORMS**.

**EARWIG** is a good bait for Salmon-Smelts; they are caught by laying a white Linen Cloth, or any thing that is hollow, on a Garden Hedge; and are proper for Float-Angling.

## E E L.



The **EEL** has a long smooth body, moistened all over with a viscous Liquor, which renders it very slippery. He feeds upon Earth-Worms, small Fish and Snails.

With regard to the Generation of Eels, Authors are divided in their Opinions; for *Aristotle* assures us,



us, that he could find no difference of sexes. *Pliny* affirms, that, though there are neither Male nor Female, they will rub themselves against Rocks and Stones, and by that means detach Particles or Scales from their Bodies, that quicken by degrees, and afterwards become small Eels. Some maintain that they couple, and at the same Instant they shed a kind of Viscosity, which, being retained in the mud, gives birth to a great number of the same Animals.

*Rondeletius* informs us, that he has seen Eels spawn together; and he thinks they cannot want the parts of Generation, since, at the lower part of the Body there is a Vulva in the Female, and Semen in the Male; but then these parts are so covered with fat, as well as the Spawn, that they do not appear. *Redi*, a *Florentine*, assures us, that all the the Eels in the river *Arno* descend every year in *August* into the sea to produce their young, and return regularly every year from *February* to *April*.

*Boccler*, and other Moderns, think that they proceed from Eggs; for though they are brought forth alive, and upon that account may be said to be viviparous, yet it does not follow from thence that they may not be produced from Eggs in their Bodies.

Some *Cheshire* Fishermen confidently affirm, that in *January*, where the *Mersey* joins the Sea, they have seen Eels linked together in the Act of Copulation: and that, on cutting open the Bellies of large Eels, they have found perfect little Elvers, or Eels, about the bigness of a small needle, which appeared to be lively, and were inclosed in a skin like a bladder, which stuck to the back-bone of the fish. These are supposed to be the Eel-brood, which in the month of *April* swim on the sides of the said river as high as *Warburton*, where the  
poor

poor people catch them in scoops, in order to store Fish-ponds, or sometimes to scald and make Eel-pyes with. Nay, so great plenty is there near *Northwich*, that the Farmers catch them, in order to feed Pigs with.

When the Rain falls about *Michaelmas*, and raises the Fish-ponds and other pieces of water, Eels attempt their escape, and will get off, though their Bodies be but half covered with water; and in general the large ones, especially the Females, make for the Sea, and do not return till Spring.

About *Michaelmas* 1741, at an Eel-Fishery at *Thelwell* in *Cheshire*, the Fishermen did, in one Night, catch in Door Nets a Ton weight of Eels, which, as supposed, were then striving to go down to the Salt Water.

The time to find them with most certainty is, when the river is clear, at which time they come up with the tide, and may be pulled out; by dipping in a small Sieve a great number may be caught.

There are four sorts of Eels, the Silver Eel, the Greenish, or Greg-Eel, the Red-fin'd Eel, and the Blackish Eel: This last has a broader, flatter, and larger Head than the rest, and is counted the worst. But whether these Distinctions are essential or accidental, will admit of a Doubt. In the *Thames* the Fishermen give them particular names; but the most usual are, the Silver-Eel, and the Greg: This last is thicker and shorter than the other sort, and of a darker colour.

Though Eels love to lurk and hide themselves in the mud, during cold weather, yet they are averse to muddy water, because they are liable to be suffocated by it: They are caught in Nets in the time of a Flood, at Mill Dams, and such-like places.

In the Day-time they skulk among Weeds, under Stones, or the Roots of Trees, or among the Planks, Piles, or boards of Wells, Bridges, or Mills.

The proper baits for an Eel are small Gudgeons, Roach, Dare, or Bleak. They are likewise fond of Lampreys, Lob-worms, small Frogs, raw Flesh, salted Beef, and the Guts of Fowls.

The best time to angle for them is on a rainy or gloomy Day, especially after thunder. Your Rod must be strong, your Line the same as for trowling, with an armed Hook, and your bait must lie ledger.

Some catch Eels with Spears, one of which (a Cord being first fastened through a Hole, bored at the top) being darted into the Mud, in the middle or deepest part of a Pond, where they lie in hot weather, it will so disturb them that they will swim to the sides, where the Eel will again strike into the mud, which will make a circle in the water, and guide the Fisherman where to strike with another Spear; by which means he may catch many fish.

Another way to take Eels is by laying baited Night-hooks, which are to be fastened to a Tree, or the Bank, in such a manner, that they may not be drawn away by the Eels: Or a string may be thrown across the stream, with several Hooks fastened to it. The Line must be tied to a large Plummet of Lead or Stone, which must be thrown into the Water with the Line, in some remarkable Place, so that it may be found readily in the Morning, and taken up with a Drag-hook, or otherwise.

SNIGGLING or BROGLING for Eels is another remarkable Method of taking them, and is only to be practised on a warm Day, when the waters

D

are

are low. This requires a strong line of silk, and a small Hook baited with a Lob-worm. Put the Line into the cleft of a stick, about a Foot and a Half from the Bait, and then trust it into such Holes and Places before-mentioned, where he is supposed to lurk ; and if there be one there, it is great odds but he takes your Bait. Some put that part of the Line next the Hook into the Cleist ; but however that be, it must be so contrived that the line may be disengaged from the stick, without checking the Eel when he takes the Bait. When he has swallowed it, he is not to be drawn out hastily, but after he is pretty well tired with pulling, and then you will make him more secure.

N. B. When you broggle under a bridge with a Boat, take care it does not strike against the Bridge, nor disturb the water, either of which will drive them into their Holes, so far, that they will scarcely ever bite. The best and largest Eels are caught in the *Mersey* by this Method.

Another manner of Sniggling, which I have seen is this : Take an ordinary sized needle, whip it only about the middle part, to three Inches of the strongest fine Twine, waxed, and fastened above to several Yards of Whip-cord, or Pack-thread ; thrust the end of your Needle into the Head-end of a large Lob-worm, and draw him on (which with care you may easily do, the Needle being strait) till you have got it up to the Middle of the Worm ; then, in the end of a small long Stick, which you may fix in a Joint or more of your Rod, let there be stuck another Needle, fastened well from slipping out, with about half an Inch of the point appearing : Put this also into the head of the baited Worm, and holding the whole length of the Cord in your hand, together with the Stick, thrust your Worm between the Cleft of  
any

any Clods or Piles in shallow water, till you have lost sight of it; then softly draw your stick away, laying it aside, keeping the line still in your hand, till you perceive it to draw, and, after some time, strike, as has been directed. The Needle, which before this lay buried strait in the worm, will, by your stroke, be pulled quite across the Throat of the Eel, and hold him fast. When he is landed, you may, by squeezing one of the points through his skin, draw that and the whole Line after it, without the Inconvenience and Trouble that is found in dislodging a Hook. Before you strike, give your line a gentle pull, which will make the Eel to shut his Mouth, and prevent your Needle slipping out, which it is apt to do, if you strike before he has gorged.

To bob for Eels, you must provide a large Quantity of well-scoured Lob-worms, and then with a long Needle pass a Thread through them from Head to Tail, until you have strung about a Pound. Tie both ends of the Thread together, and then make them up into about a dozen or twenty links. The common way is to wrap them about a dozen times round the Hand, and then tying them altogether in one place makes the Links very readily. This done, fasten them all to a small Cord, or part of a Trowling-line, about four Yards in Length. Above the Worms there should be a small loop to fix the Worms to, and for a lead Plummot to rest on. The Plummot should weigh about half a pound, or from that to a pound, according to the Stream, the smaller the Line the less the Plim; it should be made in the shape of a Pyramid, with a Hole through the Middle for the Line to pass through; the broad Part of the Plummot, or the Base of the Pyramid, should be towards the Worms, because that will



keep it more steady. When you have put your Plummet on your Line, you must fasten it to a strong, stiff, taper Pole, of about three yards long, and then the Apparatus is finished.

Being thus prepared, you must angle in muddy Water, or in the Deeps or Sides of Streams, and you will soon find the Eels tug strongly and eagerly at your bait. When you have a bite, draw them gently up towards the top of the water, and then suddenly hoist them on the Shore, or in your boat; by this means you may take three or four at a time.

A Sea Crow has been seen to pick up an Eel in a shallow River, and whilst flying away with it to let it drop, on which she has darted down with great Velocity, and getting under the Eel has caught it before it had fallen down to the water.

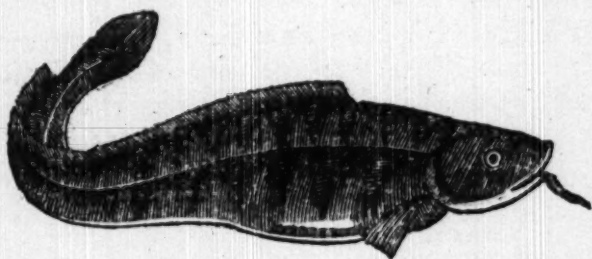
In 1750, *Robert Guillim, Esq;* of *Buisshey* in *Lancashire*, invited the neighbouring Gentry to dine under a Tent near his Fish-pond, which the Servants drew Nets through, and amongst other Fish pulled out an Eel weighing six Pounds; a Gentleman present cut it open, and in its Stomach found a half digested Eel of about a pound weight.

Sometimes when I have been angling for other Fish, I have thrown a long line into a likely Place, with several Eel-hooks on it, placed about a Yard and a half asunder, and a heavy lead to sink it. The Hooks were baited with Lob-worms and small Fish. I have not only caught Eels by this Method, but also Pike and Pearch.

Some, near Eels Haunts, sink a bottle of Hay loosely bound, stuffed with Fowls Guts, and Liver cut in long shreds, over Night, and coming early the next Morning, drawing it up hastily by the Rope, fastened to the Bank, find large Eels  
bedded

bedded in it for the sake of the Prey. This may be done with a Bundle of Brush-wood, out of which, upon pulling up, they cannot so easily get.

### EEL-POUT, or BURBOT.



The EEL-POUT has a smooth, soft, slippery body like an Eel, especially the Belly. It has either no scales, or they are exceeding small. The Colour is blackish, resembling that of a Tench. The head is a little flattish, and both the Jaws are well furnished with small teeth. On the lower jaw grows a Barb of about half an inch long, and likewise a short pair between the nostrils and the snout; the tail terminates in a circular figure.

This fish is met with chiefly in the *Trent*, though there are some in the *Severn*. They spawn in *December*, and are so fruitful, that one Roe contains no less than one hundred and twenty thousand eggs.

Their places of resort are the same as the Eels, if within the reach of the tide; and the best time to take them is after a storm of thunder and lightning with heavy rain.

The best bait for him is a small Gudgeon, Roach, or Dace; your hook should be armed on account of his sharp teeth, and because he is a vigorous strong fish, and struggles hard for life.

His flesh is good and sweet, and greatly esteemed,

ed. His usual size is from fourteen to twenty inches.

EGGS of SPIDERS, a good bait for Roach, Dace, &c.

EYES of FISH are an excellent bait for most sorts of fish.

FERN-FLY, or FERN-BOB, is found among Fern from *May-day* to the end of *August*; it is thick and short of body, has two pair of wings, the uppermost reddish and hard, which may be taken off. The last ten days of *May* the Trout will take it every day, and the Chub refuses it no part of the summer.

FISH, how to bring them together. Get the blood of an Ox, a Goat, and a Sheep, with dung of the same creatures, taken out of the small guts, with Thyme, Origanum, Penny-royal, Savory, Elder, Garlick, Lees of sweet Wines, of each alike; the Fat or Marrow of the same creatures, a sufficient quantity; beat all these that they may mix together: Make the whole into lumps, and cast them into fish-ponds, or where fish are, an hour before you propose to catch them, at which time cast your nets upon or around them.

FISH-PONDS. In making of them a principal regard ought to be had to the choice of a fit place, and a proper soil. It is now generally agreed that healthy land, inclinable to moorish, and full of springs, is the best. Let the situation, if possible, be at the bottom or side of a hill, that any sudden shower or continual rain may wash down worms, insects, and other things fit for the nourishment of the fish. This likewise will be a means of filling and refreshing the pond, if it has not the advantage of a brook or rivulet, moreover it has been observed, that those ponds, which have been so situated as to receive the stale and dung of horses,

horses, have bred the largest and the fattest fish.

The head of the pond should be at the lowest part of the ground, and the trench of the flood-gate or sluice should have a pretty swift fall, that the water may not be too long in running out when it is to be emptied.

If more ponds than one are to be made at a time, it will be more beauteous and advantageous to have them placed one above another, in such a manner that the head of the one may be next to the point or tail of the other.

If the pond carry six foot of water it is sufficient, but yet it should be eight foot deep, that there may be room enough to receive the rains and freshes that may fall into it. In some places there should be shoals for the fish to spawn upon, and sun themselves in; as likewise holes, hollow banks, and roots of trees to serve for retiring-places. Some cast in Bavins in the most sandy places, not far from the sides, which serve not only for the fish to spawn upon, but are a defence for the young fry against such vermin as would devour them. Trees should not be planted so near the pond as to incommode it with the falling in of dead leaves, because they spoil the water, and render it disagreeable to the fish.

In stocking the pond, if the fish are designed only for store, they should be all of one sex, that is, either Milters or Spawners; by this means Carp will become large and exceeding fat in a short time.

The most usual fish which ponds are stocked with, are Carp, Tench, Bream, and Pike. Of these Carp and Tench agree well enough together, but any other fish will devour their spawn. The

Pike admits of no companion but the Pearch, and he is not always safe, if not very large. However it is usual to put Roach, Dace, Bream, Chub, Gudgeons, and Minnows into the same pond with him, that he may have wherewithal to satisfy his voracious nature, and grow fat the sooner. Likewise care should be taken, that all the Pike which are put into the same pond should be nearly of a size, because a Pike of thirty inches will devour another of fifteen. Some grow more in length, others in thickness, which latter sort are the firmest fishes. For a lean, slender Pike, though he seems to advance in length, is commonly in a decaying condition, by reason of some outward wound from the Otter, or some stronger of his own kind, or an inward prick by the hock, or some other casualty. Yet even in this condition, he will be as hungry and greedy as ever.

It is observed by some, that Tench and Eels delight in those ponds chiefly whose bottoms are full of mud; whereas the Carp likes a sound gravelly bottom, where grass grows on the sides of the pond, for in the hot months, if the water happens to rise, they will feed upon it.

Some make a square hole in the middle of their ponds, three feet deep, and cover it with a sort of door supported at the corners by four strong stakes driven into the ground. This provides the fish both with a place of shelter and retreat, and likewise preserves the ponds from being robbed, for the door and stakes would tear the nets all to pieces.

In the winter season, when there happens to be a hard frost, it will be necessary from time to time to break holes in the ice, in order to give the fish air, otherwise they will all die, for they cannot live without fresh air. It must indeed  
be



be owned, that this is a rule generally known, and as generally practised.

Care should likewise be taken either to kill or drive away the enemies of fish, and devourers of their spawn; such as Herons, Cormorants, Sea-Gulls, Kings-Fishers, Water-Coots, Water-Rats, Bitterns, Wild-Ducks, and Otters, if they frequent the ponds; likewise tame ducks are great devourers of spawn, and the young Fry of fish, and therefore should not be permitted to do mischief.

It is surprising, that, considering the benefit which may accrue from making of ponds and keeping of fish, it is not more generally put in practice. For besides furnishing the table, and raising money, the Land would be vastly improved, and be worth more this way than any other, whatsoever. Suppose a meadow be worth forty Shillings an Acre; four acres converted into a pond will return every year a thousand fed Carp, from the least size to fourteen or fifteen inches long, beside Pike, Perch, Tench, and other fish. The Carp alone may be reckoned to bring, one with another, six-pence, nine-pence, and perhaps twelve-pence a piece, amounting at the lowest Rate to twenty-five pounds, and at the highest to fifty, which would be a very considerable, as well as a useful improvement.

#### FISH. *Their Enemies.*

*A thousand Foes the finny people chase;  
Nor are they safe from their own kindred race:  
The PIKE, fell tyrant of the liquid plain,  
With ravenous waste devours his fellow train:  
Yet, howsoever with raging Famine, pin'd,  
The TENCH he spares, a salutary kind.  
Hence too the PERCH, 'a like voracious brood,  
Forbears to make this gen'rous Race his food:*

*Tho' on the common drove no bound he finds,  
 But spreads unmeasur'd waste o'er all the kinds.  
 Nor less the greedy TROUT and gutless EEL  
 Incessant Woes, and dire destruction deal.  
 The lurking WATER-RAT in caverns preys,  
 And in the weeds the wily OTTER slays :  
 The ghastly NEWT in muddy streams annoys,  
 And in swift Floods the selly SNAKE destroys :  
 TOADS for the swarming fry forsake the lawn,  
 And croaking FROGS devour the tender Spawn.  
 Neither the Habitants of land or air,  
 (So sure their Doom) the fishy numbers spare,  
 The SWAN fair regent of the silver tide,  
 Their ranks destroys, and spreads their ruin wide :  
 The DUCK her offspring to the River leads,  
 And on the destin'd Fry insatiate feeds.  
 On fatal wings the pouncing BITTERN soars,  
 And wafts her Prey from the defenceless shores :  
 The watchful HALCYONS to the reeds repair,  
 And from their haunts the scaly captive bear :  
 Sharp HERNS and CORM'RANTS too their  
     tribes oppress,  
 A harra's'd race, peculiar in distress :  
 Nor can the muse enumerate their foes,  
 Such is their fate, so various are their woes.*

**FISHES FOOD.** The best food to render Pike extremely fat, is Eels, and without them it is not to be done in any reasonable time.

The best feeding place for all sorts of fish is a shoal-place, near the side of about half a yard deep, and this will be a means to keep the deeper parts sweet and clean. Besides, whatever is thrown into the water, will be more readily picked up by the fish, and nothing will be lost.

Any sort of grain boiled, is proper food for fish, especially peas and malt coarse ground.

Also

Also the Grains after brewing, while fresh and sweet, are very proper. But one bushel of malt will go as far as two of grains.

Raspings and chippings of bread, or almost any scraps from the table, placed among a cask of strong beer or ale, in such a manner that the droppings of the liquor may fall upon them, is excellent food for Carp. Two quarts of this is sufficient for thirty, and if they are fed morning and evening, it will be better than once a day only.

From *October* to *March*, thirty or forty Carp in one stew-pond may be kept well enough without feeding; but from *March* to *October* they must be fed as constantly as fowls in a coop, and they will turn to as good an account: and it must be always remembered, that constancy and regularity in the serving of fish, will conduce very much to their feeding and thriving.

It has been observed by some, that Pike in all streams, and Carp in hungry springing waters, if fed at stated times, will rise up and take their meat almost from the hand.

There are instances of fish gathering together to be fed at the sound of a bell, and other kinds of noises, even tho' the person himself keeps out of sight; which is a demonstrable proof that fishes hear. Tho' it must be acknowledged that some very learned men formerly have doubted whether fish have this faculty or not: but the *Abbe le Pluche* seems to intimate that it is now not so much as questioned.

Besides the food already mentioned, there is one sort which may be called accidental, and that is when pools or ponds happen to receive the wash of large commons, where flocks of sheep usually feed; for the water, being enriched by the  
the

the dung will maintain a much greater number of Carp, than otherwise it would do. For the same reason it is an advantage for cattle to stand in the water in hot weather and dung in it, for it nourishes the fish very much.

Some feed Carp and tench with the short mowings of grass, bullocks, and sheeps blood, and Chicken guts; which will help the growth of the Fish, and fatten them likewise. But then care should be taken to supply them with no larger quantities than they can dispense with, otherwise they will rot and putrify, thereby making the water unwholesome, and greatly endanger the Fish.

**FLAG-WORM.** Found from the flags, as the dock-worm is from the Docks. See **DOCK-WORM.** It is a good bait for Tench, Bream, and Carp.

**FLATTFR-DOCKS,** oft grow in pits, and are a shelter for the fish, but oft are an obstruction to the drawing of pits with nets; in such case the best way to remove them is by fixing a Scythe to a long pole, and mowing the docks near their root.

**FLAW.** A gouty part in an hair, which will make it break in that place.

**FLIES,** to make the useful artificial ones, you furnish yourself with a pocket case that has many partitions in it capable of holding the following materials; Bears hair of divers colours; as grey, dun, light, and dark coloured, bright brown, and that which shines: also camels hair, dark, light, and of a colour between both: Badgers hair, or fur: Spaniels hair, from behind the ear, light and dark-brown, blackish, and black: Hogs own, which may be had, about *Christmas*, of Butchers,

Butchers, or rather of those that make brawn; it should be plucked from under the throat, and other soft places of the hog, and must be of the following colours, viz. black, red, whitish, and sandy; and for other colours, you may get them died at a dyer's: Seals fur is to be had at the trunk-makers; get this also died of the colours of cows and calves hair, in all the different shades, from the light to the darkest brown; you will then never need cows or calves hair; both which are harsh, and will never work kindly, nor lie handsomely: get also mohairs, black, blue purple, white, and violet: camblets, both hair and worsted, blue, yellow, dun, light, and dark-brown, red, violet, purple, black, horse-flesh, pink, and orange colours. Some recommend the hair of abortive colts and calves, but seals fur dyed, as above, is much better; but observe that the hog-wool is best for large, and the seals fur for small flies.

A piece of an old *Turkey* carpet will furnish excellent dubbing: untwist the yarn, and pick out the wool, carefully separating the different colours, and lay it by.

Get also furs of the following animals, viz. the Squirrel, particularly from his tail: Fox-cub, from the tail where it is downy, and of an ash-colour; an old Fox, and old Otter, Otter-cub, Badger, Fulmart, or Filmert; a hare from the neck, where it is of the colour of withered fern; and above all, the yellow fur of the Marten, from off the gills or spot under the jaws. All these, and almost every other kind of fur, are easily got at the Furriers.

Hackles are a very important Article in fly-making: they are the long slender feathers that hang from the Head of a cock down his neck;  
there



there may also be fine ones got from near his tail; be careful that they are not too rank, which they are when the fibres are more than half an inch long; and for some purposes these are much too big; be provided with these of the following colours, viz. red, dun, yellowish, white, orange, and perfect black; and whenever you meet, alive or dead, with a cock of the game breed, whose hackle is of a strong brown-red, never fail to buy him: but observe that the feathers of a cock-chicken, be they ever so fine for shape and colour, are good for little; for they are too downy and weak to stand erect after they are once wet; and so are these of the *Bantam* cock.

Feathers are absolutely necessary for the wings and other parts of flies; get therefore feathers from the back and other parts of the wild Mallard, or drake, the feathers of a Partridge, especially those red ones that are in the tail: feathers from a cock Pheasant's breast and tail, the wings of a Blackbird, a brown hen, of a Starling, a Jay, a land Rail, a Throffle, a Fieldfare, and a water Coot; the feathers from the crown of the Pewit, Plover, or Lapwing; green and copper coloured Peacocks, and black Ostrich herl; feathers from a Herons neck and wings; and remember, that in most instances, where the drake's or wild Mallard's feather is hereafter directed, that from a Starling's wing, will do much better, as being of a finer grain, and less spongy.

Be provided with marking silk of all colours, fine, but very strong, Flaw-silk, gold and silver flatted wire or twist, a sharp knife, hooks of all sizes, hogs bristles for loops to your flies, Shoemakers wax, a large needle to raise your dubbing when flatted with working, and a small but sharp pair of Scissars.

and

And lastly, if any materials required in the subsequent list of flies may have been omitted in the foregoing catalogue, be careful to add them to your former stock, as often as you shall find any such omissions.

Remember, with all your dubbing, to mix Bears hair and Hogs wool, which are stiff, and not apt to imbibe the water, as the fine furs, and most other kinds of dubbing, do ; and remember also, that Martens fur is the best yellow you can use. When the angler is furnished with these materials, he may make any sort of artificial flies, to represent those which he shall perceive Trout or other fish to rise at ; but he should be sure always to have in his pocket case, the Peacock's feather, and grounds of such wool and crewel as will make the Grasshopper ; and to observe, that usually the smallest flies are the most. Also, that the light fly usually makes the best sport in a dark day, and the darkest and least fly in a bright day. But particularly observe to make your flies lighter or sadder according to your fancy, or the weather.

In making artificial dub-flies, chiefly observe and imitate the belly of the fly ; for that the fish must take notice of, as being most in their sight : and let the wings of the fly always be of an equal length, else it will not swim right and true.

When you try how to fit the colour of the fly, wet the dubbing, lest you be mistaken ; for though when dry, they exactly suit the colour of the fly, yet the water alters most colours.

Always make your dub-flies on a sun-shiny day : and to know the exact colour of of your dubbing, hold it betwixt your eye and the sun.

Never

Never let the tail of your dub-fly descend lower than till you come to the bend of the hook, and not into the bent itself, as some practise.

When trouts often shew themselves at your fly, and yet do not take it, be assured that either the day or water is improper for fly angling ; or, which is far more probable, that your dub-fly is not of the right colour and shape they then covet.

Though some always dub with silk of the most predominant colour of the fly ; yet other good anglers dub duns with yellow, and browns with red silk, and in *September* with violet coloured.

Flies made of hairs of Bears, Hogs, Squirrel-tails, Camels, Dogs, Foxes, Badgers, Otters, Ferrets, Cows, Calves skins, &c. are more natural, lively and keep colour better in the water, than flies made of Crewels and worsted stuffs, unless you mingle hair therewith.

The Feather got from the quill of a Shepfare, or starling's wings, is the best feather generally to use for dub fly wings. Next are the feathers got from the quills of Throstles, Fieldfares, Blackbirds, and those from the back of the wild Mallard, or Drake.

The hackle, or palmer fly, may be made as follows : hold your hook even with the shank downwards, and the bent of it between the forefinger and thumb of your left hand ; then take half a yard of fine red marking silk, well waxed, and, with your right hand, give it four or five turns about the shank of your hook, inclining the turns to the right hand, and there fix it with a fastening loop ; which done, take a fine bristle, singe the end, and lay it along on the inside of the shank of the hook, as low as the bent, and whip  
four

four or five times round; then singeing the other end of the Bristle to a fit length, turn it over to the back of the shank, and, pinching it into a proper form, whip down and fasten off, as before, which will bring both ends of the Silk into the bent. Wax your Silk again, take three Strans of an Ostrich Feather, and holding them, and the bent of the Hook, as at first directed, the Feathers to your left Hand, and the Roots in the bent of your Hook, with that end of the Silk which you just now waxed, whip them three or four times round, and fasten off: then turning the Feathers to the right, and twisting them and the Silk with your Fore-finger and Thumb, wind them round the shank of your Hook, still supplying the short Strans with new ones, as they fail, till you come to the end, and fasten off. When you have so done, clip off the ends of the Feathers, and trim the Body of the Palmer small at the Extremities, and full in the middle, and wax both ends of your Silk, which are now divided and lie at either end of the Hook.

This done, take a strong bold Hackle, with Fibres about half an Inch long, straiten the Stem very carefully, and, holding the small end between the Fore-finger and Thumb of your left Hand, with those of the right stroke your Fibres the contrary way to that which they naturally lie, and holding the Hook as before, lay the point of the Hackle into the bent of the Hook with the hollow, which is the palest side, upwards, and whip it very fast to its place: In doing whereof, be careful not to tie in many of the Fibres; or if you should chance to do so, pick them out with the point of a very large Needle.

When

When the Hackle is thus made fast, the utmost care and nicety is necessary in winding it on; for if you fail in this, your Fly is spoiled, and you must begin all again; to prevent which, keeping the hollow or pale side to your left Hand, and, as much as possible, the side of the Stem down on the Dubbing, wind the Hackle twice round, and holding fast what you have so wound, pick out the loose Fibres, which you may have taken in, and make another turn: Then lay hold of the Hackle with the third and fourth Fingers of your left Hand, with which you may extend it while you disengage the loose Fibres as before.

In this manner proceed, till you come to within an eighth of an Inch of the end of the Shank; where you will find an end of Silk hanging, and by which time you will find the Fibres at the great end of the Hackle somewhat discomposed; clip these off close to the Stem, and, with the end of your Middle-finger, press the Stem close to the Hook, while with the Fore-finger of your right Hand you turn the Silk into a Loop; which, when you have twice put over the end of the Shank of the Hoop, loop, and all your work is safe.

Then wax that end of the Silk which you now used, and turn it over as before, till you have taken up nearly all that remained of the Hook, observing to lay the turns neatly side by side; and, lastly, clip off the ends of the Silk: Thus will you have made a Bait that will catch Trout of the largest size in any Water in *England*.

Another method of making a Fly. Take about half a yard of fine well-waxed marking Silk, holding the Hook with the bent betwixt the Finger and Thumb of your left Hand, then lay your Hair or Link along the inside of the Shank, and  
whip



whip it till you come within about one-third part of the way towards the bent, and then turn your Silk back by a few laps till you come within about one-eighth part of the end of the shank, and make it fast, then strip off the Feathers for your Wings, keeping the small ends as even as possible; the better to do which, strip and place your Feathers at sundry times. Then lay your Feathers with the points towards the shank, and so far longer, that when you have given them a lap or two with your Silk, the points, when turned back, may come as far as the bent of your Hook; then whip their Root-ends with your Silk a few laps, and cut off the Root-end Feathers with a fine pair of Scissars a little sloping, so as a few of them may come as far as the first whipping, then whip as far as before, and fasten; and if you intend to make a Hackle, lay the small end (when any side of the Fibre is cut off) towards the Wings, and whip back by a few laps to the Wings; then divide your Wings, and, with your Silk, part them by bringing it across backward and forward three or four times; then wrap your Hackle round till you come to the Wings, then lay the remaining end towards the end of the shank, then wrap your Silk two or three times close at the back of the Wing, to throw them towards the bent; then make fast, and cut off your Silk; and if you intend to make a Dubbed-fly, part your Wings before you whip the Root-ends, and this done, whip as before; then pull and loosen your Dubbing very well, that it may twist the better about the Silk, (the less quantity sticks to the Silk, the better, so as it is equally covered in every Part,) then wrap your Silk and Dubbing from the whipping to the Wings, and fasten as before; when you make a  
Fly

Fly with dubbing twist and Hackle, whip your Hackle and twist with your Root-feathers and fasten, afterwards dub as before, and rib with your twist, and wrap your Hackle over all, whip at the back of your Wings, and make all fast.

There is another and neater method of Fly-making, preferred by some good Anglers to all others.

Take as much fine Silk, of a proper colour, as may be necessary. Wax it well: then holding the bent of the Hook between the Fore-finger and Thumb of the left Hand, give the Silk two or three turns round the shank and fasten it: then take a small Feather of the colour you would have the Wings of the Fly; strip off some of the Fibres towards the Quill end of it, leaving a sufficient quantity for the Wings: Then, holding the point of the Feather between your Finger and Thumb, turn back most of the remaining Fibres, and, laying the point end of the Feather upon the Hook, give one or two more laps round it with your Silk, and fasten: Then twirl the Feather round the Hook till all the Fibres are wrapped upon it; which done, fasten and cut off the two ends of the Feather: Then, with Dubbing of a proper colour twisted round the remaining Silk, wrap from the Wings towards the bent of the Hook, 'till your Fly is of the size you desire.

If your Fly is to be very small, you may not be able to hold the Feather in your Fingers, to wrap it round the Hook; in which case if you tie a little waxed Silk or Thread to the Quill end of it, you may manage as small a Feather as you please.

As a Ground-work for Fly-fishing, here is inserted Mr. Cotton's list of Flies.

*February.* 1. The Little Red-brown, made of the Fur of the black spot in a Hog's Ear wrapped  
on

on with red silk, the wings of the male of a Mallard almost white. 2. The Palmer-fly, or Plain-hackle, made with a rough black body, either of black Spaniels Fur, or the Whirl of an Ostrich Feather, and the red hackle of a Capon over all. 3. The Silver-hackle, made with a black Body, Silver Twist over that, and a red Feather. 4. The Great-hackle; the Body black, and wrapped with a red feather of a Capon untrimmed, that is the whole length of the Hackle on the top or back of the Fly; which makes it swim better, and, on a whirling water, kill great Fish. 5. The Gold-hackle, the body black, ribbed over with Gold-twist, and a red Feather over all, does great execution. 6. The Great-dun, made with dun Bears hairs, and the wings of the grey feather of a Mallard near his tail. This is the very best Fly this month, and makes admirable sport. 7. The Great-blue-dun, with Dubbing of the bottom of Bears hair next to the roots, mixed with a little blue Camblet; the wings of the dark grey feather of a Mallard. 8. The dark-brown, with Dubbing of the brown hair of the flank of a brended Cow, and the grey feather of a Drake for wings. These Flies are some for one water and sky, and some for another; and accordingly the size and colour are altered: Use a small hackle if the water be clear; or a bigger, if something dark; especially when you cannot know certainly, in this month or any other, what Fly is taken.

In *March*, use all the same Flies with *February*, but make them less. The names are now,  
1. The little Whirling-dun, made of the bottom fur of a Squirrel's tail, and the wings of the grey feather of a wild Drake or Mallard.

2. The early-bright-brown, made either of the down of a Spaniel, or the hair of a red Cow's flank, with a grey wing. 3. The whitish-dun, made of the roots of Camels hair, and the wings of a wild Mallard's grey feather. 4. The Thorn-three-fly, made of an absolute black, mixed with eight or ten hairs of Isabella-coloured Mohair; the body as little as can be made; the wings of a bright wild Mallard's feather. It is an admirable Fly, and a great killer. 5. The blue-dun, made with the combings of the neck of a black Greyhound. It is a fine blue. The wings can scarce be too white. It is taken best in the latter part of the month. 6. The little black-gnat, taken at the same time; and made of the fur of a black water-dog, or the down of a young black water-coot: The wings of the male of a wild Mallard, as white as can be: The body as little as you can possibly make it, and the wings as short as the body. Some make the body of the cop, or top feather on the head of a Plover. 7. The latter-bright-brown, taken from the middle of *March* to the middle of *April*, and made with Dubbing, got out of a Skinner's lime-pits, and of the hair of an abortive Calf, which the lime will turn as bright as gold. Wings of the feather of a brown Hen is best.

All the same hackles and flies that are taken in *March*, will be taken in *April* also, with this distinction only, that all the browns be lapped with red silk, and the duns with yellow silk. The names peculiar to this month are, 1. The small-bright-brown, made of Spaniel's fur; with a light grey wing, to be used in a bright day and clear water. 2. The little-dark-brown,  
the

the Dubbing of dark brown and violet Camblet mixed; the grey feather of a wild Mallard for wings. 3. The great-whirling-dun, usually taken from about the twelfth of this Month, all the Month through, about noon, and by fits from thence to the end of *June*. It is one of the best flies we have, and commonly made of the down of a Fox-chub, which is of an ash colour at the roots, and ribbed about yellow silk: The wings of the pale grey feather of a wild Mallard. 4. The violet-fly, taken only a short time about the beginning, and made of a dark violet stuff, and a very little dun Bears hair mixed therewith; the wild Mallard's grey feather for wings. 5. The yellow-dun, made of Camel's hair, and yellow Camblet; or yellow wool of a Blanket, well mixed, and a white grey wing. Others make it of dun hair of a Bear, and some yellow fur of a Marten mixed, and dub with yellow silk. The wings from the quill of a Shepstore's wing. It is an excellent fly both for *April* and *May*. 6. The Horse-flesh-fly, taken best in an evening, from two hours before sun-set, till twilight, and the whole Month through. His Dubbing of blue Mohair, with pink-coloured and red Tammy mixed; a light-coloured wing, and a dark brown head. It begins to be taken in the middle of the Month, and the best time in an evening.

In the month of *May* all the same hackles and flies may be used as in *April*, the hackles only brighter, and the flies smaller. To these I will add seven of the very prime flies for *May*, and indeed all the year; especially the dun-cut,  
Green.



Green-drake and stone-fly ; and then nine of smaller esteem, which yet are not to be despised.

In the first class are, 1. The dun-cut ; its Dubbing of Bears dun hair, with a little blue and yellow intermixed with it ; a large dun wing, and two horns at the head, made of the hair of a Squirrel's tail. It is a very killing fly. 2. The artificial green-drake, which comes in about the middle of *May*, and is taken until *Midsummer* in mountainous stony Rivers, and that at all hours, is made thus : On a large hook dub with Camels hair, bright Bears hair, the soft down combed from a Hog's bristles, and yellow camblet, well mixed together : The body must be long, and ribbed about with green silk, or rather yellow silk waxed with green wax ; the whisks of the tail of the long hair of Sables, or Fitchet ; and the wings of the white-grey feather of the wild Mallard, dyed yellow. 3. The artificial stone-fly, made of Bears dun hair, with a little brown and yellow camblet well mixed ; but so placed, that the Fly may be more yellow on the belly, and towards the tail underneath, than in any other part. You may place two or three hairs of a black Cat's beard on the top of the hook, in the arming or whipping, so as to be turned up when you wrap on your Dubbing, and to stand almost upright. This Fly is to be ribbed with yellow silk, and his wings to be long, and very large, of the dark-grey feather of the wild Mallard, or of the brown soft feather of a Kite, or of the feather got out of the wing of a Throftle. Sometimes you may dabble with an artificial stone-fly in the still deeps, in an evening, if any gentle gale of wind or breeze  
furl

furl them. 4. The black *May* fly, which is the next in order, made in the body of the black whirl of an Ostrich feather, ribbed with silver-twist, and the black hackle of a cock or capon, over. It is a killing fly, but not equal with the green drake or stone fly. 5. The little yellow *May*-fly, of the same shape with the green drake, and of as bright a yellow as can be seen, made of a bright yellow camblet; the wings of a white-grey feather dyed yellow. Some dub it with yellow fur of a Marten. 6. The grey drake in shape and dimensions perfectly the same with the green drake, but of another colour, being of a paler and more livid yellow, green, and ribbed with black quite down his body, with black shining wings, diaphanous and very tender. It comes in after the green drake, and kills very well. It is made of whitish down of a hog's bristles, and black spaniels fur mixed, and ribbed down the body with black silk: the whisks of the tail of a beard of a black cat, and the wings of the black grey feather of the wild Mallard. 7. The camblet fly, taken from the middle of *May* to the end of *June*; in shape like a moth, with fine diappered or watered wings. It is imitated with dark-brown shining camblet, ribbed over with very small light green silk, and the wings of the double grey feather of a wild Mallard. It is a very killing fly for Graylings and small Fish.

In the second class of *May*-flies are, 1. The Turkey fly, with dubbing raveled out of some blue stuff, and lapped about with yellow silk; the wings of a grey wild mallard's feather. 2. The yellow palmer, made with yellow body, ribbed with gold twist, and large wings of a wild Mallards feather dyed yellow, with the red

E

Hackle

hackle of a capon over all. 3. The black fly, with dubbing of black spaniel's fur, and wings of a grey wild Mallard's Feather. 4. The light-brown made of light brown hair, with a slender body; and the dubbing being twirled upon small red silk, and raised with the point of a needle, that the ribs or rows of silk may appear through; the wings of the grey feather of a wild Mallard. 5. The little dun, with dubbing of bears dun hair whirled upon yellow silk, and wings of a wild Mallard's grey feather. 6. The white-gnat, with a pale wing and black head. 7. The peacock fly; its body of the whirl of a Peacock's feather, with a red head, and wings of a wild Mallard's feather. 8. The Cow lady, a little fly, with the body of a peacock's feather, the wings of a red feather, or stripes of the red hackle of a cock. 9. The Cowturd fly, with little brown and yellow dubbing mixed; the wings of the dark grey feather of a wild Mallard.

From the first till near the end of *June*, are taken the green-drake and stone fly; and all the month the camblet fly. Besides these the sportsman may now make. 1. The Owl fly, taken in the middle of the month, late at night: Its dubbing of a white Weasel's tail, and a white grey wing. 2. The barm fly, with dubbing of the fur of a yellow dun cat, and the grey wings of a wild Mallard's feather. 3. The purple hackle, made with a purple body, whipped about with a red capon's feather. 4. The Purple gold hackle, made with a purple body, and gold twist over that, all whipped about with a red capon's feather. 5. The flesh fly, with dubbing of a black spaniel's fur and blue wool mixed, and a grey wing. 6. The little flesh fly,  
with

with a body made of the whirl of a Peacock's feather, and the wings of the grey feather of a wild drake. 7. The Peacock fly, its body and wings both of the feather of the fowl. 8. The Ant fly, with dubbing of brown and red Camblets mixed, and a light grey wing. 9. The brown Gnat made with a very slender body, of brown and violet camblets mixed well together, with a light grey wing. 10. The little black gnat, with dubbing of black mohair, and a white grey wing. 11. The green grasshopper, with dubbing of green and yellow wool mixed, ribbed over with green silk, and a red capon's feather over all. 12. The Dun grasshopper, its body slender, made of dun Camblet, and a dun hackle at top. 13. The brown hackle, made of the light brown hair of a fat colt, with a red hackle over all, wrapped with ash coloured or hair coloured silk.

The Dub flies for *July* are, 1. the Badger fly, with dubbing of the soft brown fur of a Badger's skin, that has been in the skimmers lime pits, twirled upon red silk, with a red head, and a sad grey wing of a wild Mallard's feather. It is an excellent fly for this month in many rivers, and also taken in many places in *March* and *April*. 2. The Orange fly, its dubbing of orange coloured wool, and the wings of the feather of a blackbird's quill. 3. The little white dun, its body made of white mohair, and the wings of a Heron's blue feather. 4. The Wasp fly, made either of dark brown dubbing, or else of the fur of a black cat's tail, ribbed about with yellow silk; its wings of the grey feather of a wild Mallard. 5. The black hackle, the body made of the whirl of a Peacock's feather, and a black hackle feather

on the top. There is also another, made of a Peacock's herl without any wings. 6. The shell fly, with dubbing of yellow green *Jersey* wool, and a little white hogs hair mixed. 7. The black blue dun, the dubbing of the fur of a black rabbit, mixed with a little yellow; the wings of the feather of a blue pidgeon's wing.

*August.* The same flies with *July*. Then, 1. Another ant fly; the dubbing, the black brown hair of a cow, some red warpped in for the tag of his tail, and a dark wing; a killing Fly. 2. the Fern fly; the dubbing of the fur of a Hare's neck, that is of the colour of Fern, with a darkish grey wing of a Mallard's feather; a killer too. 3. A white hackle; its body of white mohair, wrapped about with a white hackle feather. 4. A Harry-long-legs; the body made of bear's dun and blue wool mixed, and a brown hackle feather over all: All the same browns and duns are taken this month that were in *May*.

*September.* The same flies are taken this month that were in *April*: to which I shall only add, 1. A Camel brown fly; the dubbing, pulled out of the lime of a wall, whipped about with red Silk, and a darkish grey Mallard's feather for the wing. 2. One other, for which we have no name; it is made of the black hair of a badger's skin, mixed with the yellow softest Down of a fanded hog.

*October.* The same Flies that were taken in *March*.

*November.* The same Flies that were taken in *February*.

*December.* Few men angle with a Fly this month, no more than they do in *January*; but yet,



yet, if the weather be warm, then a brown, that looks red in the hand, and yellowish betwixt your eyes and the sun, will both raise and kill in a clear water, and free from snow broth.

## MODERN CATALOGUE of FLIES.

### NUMBER I.

*February.* Red fly : Is made of a drake's feather, and the body of red hackle, and the red part of Squirrel's fur. He has four wings, and they lie flat on his back. Peacock's hackle. Peacock's herl; alone, or interchanged with Ostrich herl; warping, red silk, red cock's hackle over all; it may be varied by a black cock's hackle and silver twist. Taken chiefly from nine to eleven in the morning, and from one to three in the afternoon. This and the several other hackles, which we have here and hereafter described, being most tempting baits, should always be first tried when the angler comes to a strange river; and not changed till he has found out, and is certain what particular fly is upon the water.

*March.* 1. Green Peacock hackle. Greenish herl of a Peacock: warping, green silk, a black hackle over all. Taken from eight to eleven in the morning. 2. Dark brown, dub with the hair of a dark brown spaniel or calf, that looks ruddy by being exposed to wind and weather; warp with ruddy or chocolate coloured silk. The wing of the darkish part of a Starling's Quill feather. Taken chiefly from nine to eleven in the morning; the same Fly takes in *September.* 3. Ash coloured dun, dub with the roots of a Fox-cub's tail; warp with pale yellow

low filk : wing of the pale part of a Starling's feather. This fly, which is also called the violet dun and blue dun, is to be found on almost every river ; it varies much in its colour, according to the season of the year. In *March* and *September* it is called, and that very properly, the violet dun ; for it has often that hue ; and therefore, it is usual to mix the blue violet crewel with the fox-cub down. In *April* it assumes a pale ash colour, and in *May* is of a beautiful lemon colour, both body and wings. In *June* and *July* it is blue-black, and from *July* it insensibly varies till it becomes of its primitive colour, violet-dun, which it never fails to do by *September*.

*April* 1. Pearl-colour, or Heron dun. Dub with the yellowish or ash coloured herl of a Heron, warp with ash coloured filk : wing, from the short feather of a Heron, or from a coot's wing of an ash colour. Morning and afternoon. 2. Blue dun. Dub with the fur of a Water rat ; warp with ash colour : wing of a Coot's feather, morning and afternoon. 3. Cowdung fly, comes on about the middle of *March*, and continues till the latter end of *April*, but it is not to be fished with unless it be a cold windy day. The wings to be made of the blue feather of a Hen tipped with yellow ; to lie flat : use for the body a Lemon coloured mohair, with a yellow feather about it. The whole should resemble the large horse ant fly. 4. Spider fly, comes about the middle of *April*, if it be a favourable spring. The wings are made of a woodcock's feather, that lies under the but end of the wing ; the body of lead coloured filk, with a black cock's hackle wrapped twice or thrice round :

round: the body must be made in the shape of the ant fly. This fly appears in bright and warm days, and comes out of beds of gravel by the water side, where you may find them in bunches from the middle to the latter end of the month, in warm sun shining days.

*May.* 1. Silver twist hackle. Dub with the herl of an Ostrich feather; warp with dark green, silver twist, and black cock's hackle over all. Taken from nine to eleven, especially in a showery day. 2. Sooty dun. Dub with dark black Spaniel's fur, or the herl of an Ostrich; warp with green: wing, the dark part of a land-rail or coot. Taken best in a showery day, as also in *April* and *June*. 3. Light flaming, or spring brown. Dub with light brown of a Calf; warp with orange colour, wing of a pale grey Mallard's feather. Taken chiefly before Sun-set in a warm evening; a good fly. We would recommend the making it after the natural fly, and that according to the following directions. 4. Oak Fly. By some called the ash fly, (by others the cannon fly.) The head, which is large, of an ash colour: the upper part of the body greyish, and two or three hairs of bright brown mixed, and very little light blue, and sometimes a hair or two of light green; the tail-part is greyish mixed with orange: wing, of a mottled brown feather of a Woodcock, Partridge, or brown hen: Hook No. 8, or 9. This is the Fly which is seen much in *April*, *May* and *June*, on the bodies of Ashes, Oaks, Willows, or Thorns, growing near the water, standing with its head downwards; it is an excellent Fly, but difficult to imitate being of many colours, unequally mixed. It takes chiefly in the Morning; it does not seem to come from any

Cadis; for it never drops in great numbers on the water; and the wings are short, and lie flat on the back, like the blue bottle or large Flesh-fly. 5. Orange tawny, Orange brown, Camblet fly, Alder fly, Withy fly, or Bastard cadis. Dub with dark brown Spaniel's hair, or Calf's hair that shines, or barge sail; warp with deep orange, black hackle under the wing: wing of a darkish feather of a Mallard or Starling. Taken chiefly in a morning before the green drake comes upon the water. 6. Huzzard. Dub with pale lemon coloured mohair, or Ostrich feather dyed yellow, warp with yellow, gold twist, and yellow hackle over all: wing, of a very pale Mallard's feather dyed of a lemon colour, the wings large, and longer than the body, lying flat on the back. Taken in a blustering day, before the *May* fly comes in. A Fly little known, but the most beautiful of the insect species that frequent the water. It is larger than the green drake, of a beautiful lemon colour, both body and wings, which are four in number, and lie close to its back. It is to be met with but in few rivers, and is esteemed a great curiosity. In those rivers that produce them, they appear in great numbers about the latter end of *April*; at which time and afterwards, the Trout rises at them very eagerly: doubtless this is a true water fly: It is supposed to be produced from a very large cadis. 7. Death drake. The body one herl of black Ostrich and two of Peacock; silver twist, black hackle: wing of the dark feather of a Mallard of a copper colour. Taken chiefly in an evening when the *May* fly is almost gone. 8. Yellow miller, or Owl fly. The body of a yellow Marten's fur, or Ostrich herl dyed buff colour: wing, of the ruddy feather of a young Peacock's wing  
or

or pale brown Chicken. Taken from Sun-set till Ten at Night, and from Two till Four in the Morning.

*June.* 1. Orle-fly, comes down the beginning, and continues till the end of *June*, and is the best Fly to fish with after the *May*-flies are gone. The Wings of this Fly are made of a dark-grizzel'd Cock's Hackle; the Body of a Peacock's Herl, with very dark-red Silk. It has four Wings, which should lie flat on the Back as it swims down the water. This Fly is to be fished with in the warmest weather, and you may use it with success from ten o'Clock till four in the Afternoon, at which time the fish leave off the Orle-fly, and take the Sky-coloured Blue. 2. Sky-coloured Blue Fly, is on at the same season with the former, but never appears till the evening, and a very hot day. Is made of the Feather of a light-blue Hen, with a yellowish gloss: the Body is made of a light blue Fur, mixed with a bright yellow, with a Silver-grizzled Hackle over it. This Fly comes on about the middle of *June*, and continues till the middle of *July*. 3. Cadis Fly, proceeding from the Cod bait, begins with *June*; and is a large Fly, having four pale yellow Wings, all of one colour, and a pale yellow Body, ribbed with dark brown. The Wings are made of a yellow Hen's Feather: the body, of a buff-coloured yellow Fur, ribbed with dark brown Silk, and a yellow Hackle three times round. This Fly continues till about a week in *July* before they are all gone; and is to be fished with at the clearing of the water, after it has been discoloured, when no other Fly will do so well. This little Creature, while in the state of a Grub, is a very choice Bait at Bottom-fishing. Fern Fly comes in about the latter end of *June*, and is of



short continuance. It has four Wings that stand upright on his Back. The Wings and Body are made of a Woodcock's Feather, ribbed with orange-coloured Silk. It may be fished with in a Morning, the first of any Fly, till about eleven o'Clock, and then you may change your Fly according to the brightness or dulness of the day, for there are many Flies on at that time.

*July.* 1. Middling brown. Made of Calf's Hair twisted upon pale yellow Silk, for the Silk to appear: Wing of a Mallard's Feather. 2. Dark brown. Warp with red Silk, with a deep orange Tag at the Tail: Wing of a Mallard's Feather. 3. Willow-cricket, or small Peacock-fly. A Herl of a green Peacock's Feather; warp with green Silk: Wing of a Starling's Feather longer than the Body. A Morning fly, especially for Grayling in rapid Rivers. 4. Pismire. The Body, some few Reeves of a Cock Pheasant's Tail-feather, or ruddy Barge sail or brown Carpet, or old Bear's Hair, towards the Roots, tanned with the weather: One Peacock's Herl may be twisted with it: Warp with ruddy Silk: Wing, the light part of a Starling's Feather left longer than the Body. A killing Fly after an Emmet-flight, but not before.

*August.* The Pismire thro' this Month; as also the other Flies of the last Month.

*September.* Large foetid light brown. The Body of a light Calf or Cow's Hair, or Seal's Fur died of the colour; warp with ruddy or orange coloured Silk: Wing of a ruddy brown Chicken, large and long. A killing Fly in the Morning. This Fly is much upon *Hackney River*, and is much ruddier there than elsewhere.

## NUMBER II.

*January.* 1. Spring black. Body, black Wool of a Sheep's Face, with or without a greenish Peacock's Herl; warp with brown Silk: Wing, the grey Feather of a Mallard. 2. Second Spring black. Body, the very blackest part of the darkest Hare's Scut you can procure, with or without a greenish Peacock's Herl; Warp with ash coloured Silk: Wing of a Fieldfare's Feather. This and the other Spring black are best taken in bright weather. 2. Dark Blue herl. Body, black Rabbit's Scut; black of a Hare's Scut: greenish Peacock Herl; warp with brown Silk: Wing, the light part of a Fieldfare's Feather. 3. Black hackle. Body, pale yellow Silk, with a black Cock's Hackle turned about it. 4. Dun hackle. Body, dun coloured Silk, with a dun Cock's Hackle.

*February.* The same Flies as are directed for the preceding Month.

*March.* The same Flies as are directed for the preceding Months; and also the *Turkey fly*, or *March fly*. Body, brown Foal's hair; tops of the wings of a Woodcock, some ruddy, others grey, well mixed together: warp with pink and yellow, or pink and light coloured brown Silk, twisted together: Wing of a Pheasant Cock's feather. N. B. This, it is supposed, is the Cob-fly, so much cried up in *Wales*. 2. Brown fly, or dun Drake, begins to come down about the middle of *March*, and continues till about the middle of *April*. It is made of a Partridge or Pheasant's feather; the Body of a Partridge's Hackle, with Hair's fur under it, ribbed with yellow Silk. The red fly, the blue fly, and the brown fly, frequently appear upon the water all at one time; but there is no necessity of fishing with the red fly after they have tasted the  
blue

blue fly. They take the blue fly in the morning, till the brown fly comes on, which he does about eleven, and then they take the brown till two or three o'Clock. In this order they continue till the end of the Month.

*April.* 1. Light blue. Body, light Fox-cub fur, a little light Foal's hair; a little Squirrel's fur that is light coloured, all these well mixed together: warp with yellow Silk: Wing of a light Fieldfare's feather. 2. Dun. Body, dunnest Marten's fur; Indian Fox-dun; light dun Fox-Cub; coarse hair of the stump of a Squirrel's Tail, of a brightish brown or a yellowish cast; warp with yellow Silk: Wing, the light feather of a Fieldfare. 3. Plain-hackle. Body, black Ostrich Herl, with red or black Cock's Hackle over it; and in hot weather add Gold-twist. 4. Red hackle. Body, red Silk and Gold-twist, and a red Cock's Hackle, till *June*. Afterwards use orange Silk for the Body. An excellent fly. N. B. This is more properly the Orange-fly. It resembles in colour a *Seville* Orange. Wings may be added, either of a Hen or Chicken, of an orange or ruddy cast; or a dull dark Wing of the softest feather of a Rook's Wing. It has four Wings, two next the Body of a very dark grey colour, and two serving as a Case over them, sometimes of a dirty blackish colour, and sometimes of an orange colour. 5. Pale blue Watchet. Is a small fly, and appears on the water in a cold Day: The Body, fur of a Water Rat, black part of a Hare's Scut, the pale Roots cut off; a very little brown Bear's hair: warp with the pale brown, or olive-coloured Silk: Wing of a Hen Blackbird. 6. Yellow-watchet. Body, Water Rat's fur, the blackest part of a Hare's Scut, greenish yellow  
Crewel

Crewel for feet; warp with green Silk: Wing, the lightest part of a Blackbird's feather. 7. Knotted-grey-gnat. Body, darkest part of a Hare's Scut, dark brown Foal's hair, dark fur of the black of an old Fox; warp with grey Silk: Wing, the blue feather of a Fieldfare. 8. Green tail. Body, dark part of a Hare's Scut and darkest blue fur of an old Fox; light part of a Squirrel's Tail, and a hair or two of the coarse brownish part of it for Feet; warp with ash coloured Silk: Wing of a Hen Pheasant. 9. Sand fly. Body, dark brown Foal's hair, a little blue Squirrel's fur, and the whitish yellow of the same; warp with yellow Silk: Wing, the light part of a Fieldfare's feather. 10. Black Caterpillar fly, comes about the middle of April, and appears till the middle of May. Wings, of a Jay's feather, one part blue and the other part black; Body, of a feather out of the top of a Plover, with a dark Hackle over it. The Body of this fly is of a fine Shag like Velvet, which the Plover's feather makes incomparably well, to be fished with in warm days, provided there come winds and clouds; for then the flies grow weak for want of the sun, and fall upon the water in great numbers.

*May.* The nine foregoing flies directed for *April*, and also, 1. The Blue Herl. Body, Fox's fur, dark part of a Hare's Scut, greenish Herl of a Peacock (if the Weather is warm for the season, otherwise little or none of the greenish Herl;) warp with brown Silk; Wing, of a Starling's feather. 2. Dun. Body, dunnish blue fur of an old Fox, mixed with pale yellow, the ends of the hairs of an old Fox almost red; some coarse hairs taken out of the Tail, or Brush; warp with yellow: Wing, Starling's feather. 3. Stone-gnat. Body, the Roots of the darkest

Part

part of a Hare's Scut, the top or ends being cut off; warp with ash coloured Silk: Wing, a Blackbird's feather. 4. Light blue. Body, light fur of an old Fox, mixed with pale yellow Crewel; warp with pale yellow Silk: Wing, light feather of a Jay. 5. Orange brown. Body, orange coloured wool, with bright brown Bear's hair mixed; warp with orange Silk: Wing, of a Starling's feather. 6. Peacock Hackle. Body, Peacock's ruddy Herl; red Cock's Hackle; warp with red Silk. 7. Black herl. Black Herl of an Ostrich, and ruddy Herl of a Peacock, twisted together; warp with brown Silk: Wing, the light feather of a Fieldfare. 8. Pewet, or Lapwing's-topping. Body, Peacock's Herl, and that of a Lapwing's Crown feather, twisted together; warp with red Silk: Wing, the red feather of a Partridge-tail. 9. Red-herl. Body, two Herls of a Peacock, twisted together; warp with ruddy Silk: Wing, the red feather of a Partridge-tail. 10. Little Iron Blue fly, begins and ends with *May*: in cold or stormy days they come in great quantities. The wing of this fly is made of a Cormorant's feather that lies under the wing, in the same form as those of a Goose: the Body is made with the fur of a Mole, or rather a Water-Rat's fur, if you can have it, ribbed with yellow Silk, and a grizzle Hackle wrapped twice or thrice round. The wings should stand upright, with a little forked tail. This fly is greatly admired by the Grayling. 11. Yellow Sally fly, appears from the middle of *May* to the beginning of *June*. The wings are made of a yellow Cock's Hackle, by reason of its shining glossiness, which no dyed colour can come up to; it has four wings, which lie flat: the Body is made with yellow dubbing, mixed with dark brown fur, and a yellow



low hackle round it. This fly, the cannon fly, and the shorn fly, are the three flies that prepare the fish to look for the yellow cadow, or *May-fly*. 12. Shorn fly comes in the middle of *May*, and continues about a Month; and is frequently found in mowing of Grass, has a husky wing of a dark brown colour, with fine clear blue wings underneath, which he makes use of in his flight. This fly is of the Caterpillar kind: the female fly is of a dull red. They are in the greatest perfection about mowing-time, for after the Grass is cut few are to be seen. It is as killing a fly as any I know till the *May-fly* comes in, yet has been taken but very little notice of by Anglers, though it is the only fly to fish with in the forenoon, before the yellow Cadow comes down. The wings of this fly are made of a Jay's feather, taken out of the wing, mixed with a little black and blue; and the body is made of a flesh-coloured silk, and red hackle about it. This fly will never fail killing fish, if the water be in order.

*June.* The Dun, Stone-gnat, Light-blue, Orange brown, Peacock hackle, Black herl, Pewet's topping, and Red herl, of the last month, go also through this; there are likewise taken, 1. The whittish. Body, the Root end of the white part of a Hare's Scut; light grey Foal's hair, or Camel's hair, towards the tail, the dark part of a Hair's Scut, with some brown hairs mixed: Peacock's Herl for the head; warp with white silk: Wing, the feather of a Sea Mew. 2. Light grey. Body, fur of the inner part of a Rabbit's Leg, the lightest of the dark part of a Hare's Scut; warp with ash-coloured silk: Wings, Light-grey Mallard's feather. 3. Brown Night-fly, is made of the brown feather of a Hen, and the

the Body of the same colour. This is properly a Moth, which flies by Night only : and is to be used (if you are inclined for Night-fishing) in a dark gloomy Night, after a warm Day. When you fish in this manner, use a Line about a yard longer than the Rod, and put a couple of Maggots at the point of the Hook, which will be of great advantage to the smelling part. It will take fish both in streams and standing waters, and you may hear them rise in as much perfection as if you were fishing by Day. They will continue to bite till Day-break, if the Night be gloomy and cloudy ; but if it be a Moon-shining or Star-light Night, they will not stir at these flies, any more than they will at the Day-flies in a bright Day.

4. White Night-fly is, in my opinion, the best of the two. To be made of the white Owl's feather, on account of the softness of it, upon a middle sized Worm hook ; the Body of the same colour as the wings, and as big as a very large Wheat-straw. It is in perfection about the latter end of *May*, and continues till the latter end of *June* ; when, if you set out with an intent of killing a dish of fish in the Day, and fail of success, you may be sure of taking them at Night, if you are so disposed, and this Night fly is on the water.

*July*. The Peacock-hackle, Black-herl, Pewet's topping, and Red-herl of *May* and *June*, and the Whitterish and Light-grey of the last Month, serve also for this, and to those add the brown. Body, hair of a very light brown or reddish Calf or Spaniel and light Bear's hair mixed ; warp with pale orange : Wing, the feather of a Land Rail.

Red Spinner, begins with *July* and ends the middle of the Month, only serviceable in Evenings of hot Days. The wings to be made of a grey  
Drake's

drake's feather, lightly tinged with a yellow gloss; the body is made of a gold twist, with a red hackle over it.

Blue Gnat, begins with *July*, and is a good killer when the water is low and fine. The wings to be made of a light blue Cock's hackle; the body, of the blue fur of a Fox; mixed with some yellow.

Large red Ant Fly, as well as the black, come in about the middle of June, if the weather be hot, and continue for about a week or nine days. Observe that these two Ant Flies that come first, are the large horse Ants. The wings of this red fly are made of a feather out of the wing of a Starling, of a dusky colour: the body of Hog's down, died of an amber colour. It must be made very large at the tail, and small towards the wing: with a red Cock's hackle wrapped twice round under the but-end of the wing.

Large black Ant Fly, with wings made of the lightest sky-coloured blue feather you can get, and of the greatest gloss; the body is made of an Ostrich's black feather, and a black Cock's hackle wrapped twice round under the wing. This fly is to be made in the same form as the red one.

Welshman's Button. The Welshman's Button, or Hazle Fly, comes in the latter end of July. It has an outer husky wing, and a small blue one under it; and is round as a button, from whence it has its name.

They are found upon Hazle Trees and Fern Bushes; and as soon as the bushes are touched they drop down. They are as good for bobbing at the bush in this month, as the cannon or down hill fly is in May. The wing is made of a  
dark

dark hackle feather of a Pheasant ; and the body of the dark part of a Camel's hair.

*August.* The Peacock Hackle, and the three following Flies of *May*, and the two subsequent months, and the brown of the last month, serve also for this ; in which also are taken, 1. The Grey-fly. Body, light grey foal's hair mixed with the dark part of a Hair's Scut ; warp with grey silk : Wing, a Hen Pheasant's feather. 2. black Ant-fly. Body, darkest part of a Hair's Scut, and the dark brown wool or Sheep's Russet, equally mixed, and one single ruddy Herl of a Peacock, all twisted together ; warp with copper-coloured silk : Wing, a Fieldfare's feather. 3. brown Ant-fly : Body, bright brown Bear's hair, much weather-beaten, almost of an orange colour towards the tail, and therefore a few hairs of a light brown, or flame coloured Calf, or Spaniel's hair to be added in the tail part ; warp with orange coloured silk : Wing, the light feather of a Fieldfare or Starling. 4. Little red and black Ant-flies, come down the beginning of *August* ; but very seldom appear on the water till between one and four in the afternoon. They are made of the same materials that the large ones are, and in the same shape, but only half so large. 5. Little Whirling Blue, comes down the beginning of *August*, and continues about a fortnight. The Wings are made of the blue feather of a Sea Gull ; and the body of the red part of a Squirrel's Fur, ribbed with yellow, and a red hackle over it. This fly is only to be used in the evening, and in warm weather. 6. Little pale blue, comes down the beginning of *August*, and continues till the middle of *September*. It is a fly that the Graylings greatly admire, which are in perfection in this season, and afford the Angler much sport. The Wings of this fly are  
made

made of the lightest blue feather of a sea Swallow : the body is made of the bluest part of a fox's fur, with a very little yellow mohair mixed with it, ribbed with a straw coloured silk, and a fine pale blue hackle over it. This Fly continues till the Willow fly comes, and afterwards till the weather grows cold. 7. Willow fly, comes on the middle of *August*, or sometimes sooner, and continues till the Dun Blue comes again. It has four wings, which lie flat on the back : The belly of a dirty yellow, and the back of a dark brown. The wings are made of a dun Cock's hackle a little freckled ; the body of a Squirrel's fur, ribbed with yellow silk, and covered lightly with the same coloured hackle as the wings. In cold stormy days you must chiefly use this fly ; but in warm gloomy days you must fish with the pale blue, and these two flies carry out the season for fly-fishing.

From the latter end of *May* till the beginning of *August*, you will find fifteen or sixteen different sorts of Gnats and Flies on the water every day : and then, if the weather be warm, you must observe it as a general rule, to fish with the first fly that comes on in a morning ; and then you will see the other flies coming down gradually ; and, as the fish leave off one and take another, you must vary your fly according to your discretion and observation. From about the middle of *August* you will find most of the other flies fall off, except the little Whirling Blue, the Pale Blue, the Willow Fly, and some small Gnats that are of little or no signification ; and these three Autumn Flies are reckoned to be of equal value to the three first Spring Flies, viz. The red Fly, the blue Dun, and the brown Drake. In these two seasons, if the weather and water be favourable, you will find  
your



your sport more regular and certain than in the hotter months, one reason of which, among others, is, that in the hotter months the rivers abound with a great variety of insects, which makes the fish more difficult to be taken ; and in the spring you have the advantage of having the river fuller of fish, before they are disturbed with Nets, &c.

The Flies here mentioned are found in all rivers, only the May-fly and grey Drake, are much more scarce on some rivers than others ; and therefore, where they are scarce, and the fish not well acquainted with them, less sport is to be expected than where they are plentiful. It is commonly said, that Flies differ according to the rivers, but 'tis an error. 8. Dragon Fly, feeds on small insects scarce discernible to the naked eye. The head of this Fly is almost all eyes ; he has four wings of a dark brownish colour, and his body is of the same. The bodies of some of them are two inches and a half long. This Flie comes in about the middle of *May* and continues about two months, and is a good decoy for a Salmon, as is a Fly called the King's Fisher, which appears in June and July.

N. B. Though here have been particularly mentioned the Flies for each month, yet some Anglers go a shorter way to work ; they take their landing net, and with it, catch from the river, one of the Flies of the day, from which they instantly make an artificial one, and proceed to Fly-fishing, with the words of Mr. Gay :

*To frame the little Animal provide  
All the gay Hues that wait on Female Pride ;  
Let nature guide thee ; sometimes golden Wire  
The shining Bellies of the Fly require ;  
The Peacock's Plumes thy Tackle must not fail,  
Nor the dear Purchase of the Sable's Tail ;*

*Each*

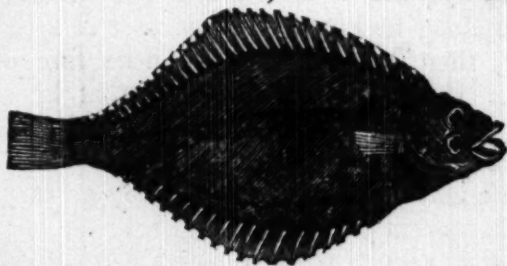
*Each gaudy Bird some slender tribute brings,  
And lends the growing Insect proper wings;  
Silks, of all colours, must their aid impart,  
And every Fur promote the Fisher's art:  
So the gay Lady with expensive care,  
Borrows the pride of Land, of Sea, of Air;  
Furs, Pearls, and Plumes, the glitt'ring thing displays,  
Dazzles our Eyes, and easy Hearts betrays.*

NATURAL-FLIES for angling are of various kinds, the principal of which, according to their seasons, are as follow :

In *January*, the dung-gnat, *February* the brown palmer, the dun-fly, and the blue-dun. *March*, the whirling-dun, the thorn-three-fly, and the black-gnat. *April*, the stone-fly, the yellow dun, the violet-fly, and the horse-flesh-fly. *May*, the *May-fly*, the green-drake, and the grey-drake. *June*, the *May-fly*, the black-ant-fly, and all the Palmers. *July*, the orange-fly, the wasp-fly, and the shell-fly. *August*, the drake-fly, the late ant-fly, and the fern-fly. *September*, the camel brown-fly, and the late badger-fly. *October*, the same Flies as in *March*. *November*, the same as *February*. *December*, the same as *January*.

FLOATS for rapid rivers should be of Cork, quills not being able to bear up against strong streams ; but then they are best for Pits, Ponds, Meers, and standing waters.

FLOUNDER, or FLUKE.



Is in shape much like a Plaice, only the body is somewhat

somewhat longer, and when it is full grown it is thicker. The colour is of a dirty olive. Sometimes they are beautifully spotted, but we never meet with any of these, except far up the river *Thames*.

The Flounder is both a River and a Sea-fish, and will do very well in a Pond; but the former are not so black, and are more soft than the latter. But this difference seems to arise only from the nature of their food.

They are in season all the year, except in *June* and *July*, which is their time of spawning, and then they are sick and flabby, and infested with worms which breed on their backs.

The flesh is white, soft, innocent, and nourishing; but it is always best when it is most firm. The taste of it is much like that of the Plaice, from which it differs but little in any respect.

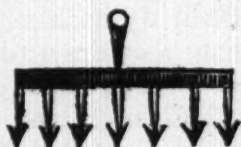
It is the nature of all flat fish to lie and feed at the bottom; some indeed are fond of mud, but the Flounders avoid it as much as possible, delighting to lie on sandy or gravelly bottoms, especially on the declivity of a deep hole, near a bank, and in an eddy.

They may be angled for either with a float or a running bullet, but the latter is preferable. The bullet should rest at least a foot from the hook, that the bait may be at liberty to be put in motion by the water. If you use a float, let it lie flat on the water, and when you perceive it to move along slowly, and soon after to become upright, then strike, and you will be sure of your prey. But always remember, that he is some time in sucking the bait into his mouth, before he gorges it.

The best Baits are red Worms, or very small Marsh-worms put on a small hook. You should bait the ground with a handful of small red-worms

worms cut in two pieces. They may be angled for all the day, but early in the morning is the likeliest time. He likewise takes Earth-bobs very well.

In the hot months, there are great quantities caught with the Fluke-Rake. The method is to get one about two yards long, made thus,



and go to the shallow parts of the water where it is the most sandy, and as you go along, keep thrusting the rake into the sand, which you may easily do, by setting one foot upon the frame, and when you have caught one you will easily perceive it by the rakes grasping as the forks enter his back. This method is only used in the Tide's-way after it is gone down.

FROGS of a british yellow, that are found in green meadows in *June* and *July*, are good baits for Chubs, Pikes, Pearches, and Eels.

GAD, a small Jack.

GENTLES, or MAGGOTS, are kept with dead flesh, beast's liver, or suet; or, which is better, you may both keep and scour them in meal or wheat-bran. In order to breed them, prick a beast's liver full of holes; hang it in the sun in summer time, and set under it an old barrel, or small ferkin, with clay and bran in it; into which they will drop, and cleanse themselves, and be always ready for use. In this manner Gentles may be produced till *Michaelmas*: But if you would fish with them from *Michaelmas* to *May-day*, you must get a dead Cat, Kite, or other Carrion, at the latter end of *September*, and let it be fly-blown; and

when

when the Gentles begin to be alive and stir, bury it and them together in moist earth, deep in the ground, that the frost may neither kill nor injure them, and they will serve for use till *March* and *April* following, about which time they turn to be flesh flies.

Gentles are sometimes added to a worm, or put on the point of a dub-fly hook for Salmon Smelts; but most commonly they are used by themselves, frequently two or three on a hook at a time. When you go to fish with Gentles, you may put them in a horn, wherein there are small holes bored to let in air, either with some wheat-bran only, or a few shavings of a Barber's sweet Wash-ball among the bran: But the best way is to put them, the day you angle, in a box with some gum-ivy, and you will find it of no small effect. Wet your bran with a little Saffron-water, and put a little Chandler's fat; it will both scour, keep, and give them a fine colour.

Gentles are good baits for Roach, Dace, Chub, Carp, Tench, Barbel, Bream, and Bleak; and in some rivers and seasons, if the water be clear, even a Gudgeon or Trout will take them.

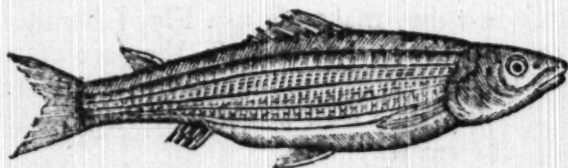
GRAIN, viz. Wheat or Malt, should be boiled gently in milk or sweet-wort; it is then fit for use; though some afterwards, and, indeed, not without reason, fry it in honey and milk, or steep it in some strong-scented oils, as Amber, Spike, Polypody, Ivy, Annise, Turpentine, or oil of *Peter*. Grain is a good bait, either in Winter or Summer, for Chub, Roach, Dace, and Bleak; but take care that before you bait your hook, you strip off the bran.

GRASSHOPPERS are found in green Meadows and Grass; and fish take them the best in the latter end of *June*, all *July*, and *August*. The middle



middle sized are best; but you must cut off their legs and outward wings. For Trout, Grayling, and Chub, you may lead your hook on the shank, with a plate of lead, made narrowest and slenderest at the bent of the hook, that the bait may come over it; then draw him over the lead, after put a lesser grasshopper, or a cod bait on the point, and keep your bait in continual motion, lifting it up and sinking it again.

### GRAYLING, or UMBER.



The GRAYLING is in proportion neither so broad nor so thick as a trout, and in size seldom exceeds eighteen inches; they weigh about half a pound; but in some places they are said to be three times as heavy.

They delight in rivers that glide through mountainous places, and are to be met with in the clearest and swiftest parts of those streams, particularly they are bred in the *Hodder, Dove, Trent, Derwen, Wye, and Lug.*

This fish may be eaten all the year, but its principal season is in *December*, at which time his head, gills, and the list that runs down his back, are all black.

The time of its spawning is in *May.*

The Flesh is accounted by some to have the most agreeable taste of all river fish; it is firm, white, cleaves like Salmon, and is judged to be very wholesome

It is a brisk sprightly fish when in the water, and swims as swift as an arrow out of a bow; but when he feels the hook he is dead hearted, and yields rather too soon for the Angler's diversion.

He feeds upon Grasshoppers, Flies, worms, and such like insects, and therefore such sorts of baits must be used in order to take him; but a well-scoured worm is preferable to any bait, if used about four inches from the bottom.

The same rules that have been laid down for taking the Trout, will also serve for the Grayling, only let your hackle be somewhat finer. Some Anglers when they make use of a Fly, fasten their hook to two hairs; but because they are apt to tangle in the weeds, the silk-worm-gut is preferable, which should be well waxed with virgin wax, to hinder it from fraying.

The Grayling has so quick an eye, that he has discovered and taken the bait six inches out of the water, when the sportsman has been angling for him standing upon a bridge.

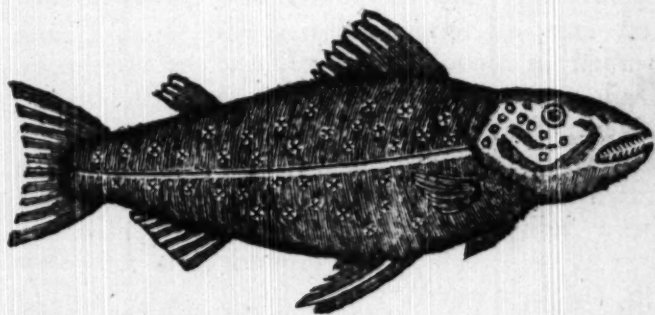
You may observe likewise, that he is a much simpler and bolder fish than a trout; for if you miss him twenty times, he will still continue to rise at your fly. And as this is his peculiar property, that he is more apt to rise than descend, your bait should never drag on the ground, but be six or nine inches from the bottom; and for the same reason it will be more proper to use a Float than a running line; but when you use the latter, the best ground baits are the brimbling, gilt tail, tag-tail, the meadow worm well scoured, cod baits, bark worm, and flag worm; and at the top he may be taken either with natural or artificial flies or with the earth bob, or clap bait.

GREEN-DRAKE-FLY is a *May-fly*, bred under water; his body is either of a pale or dark Yel-

Yellow, ribb'd with rows of green, long, slender, and sharpening towards the tail, at the end of which he has three long whisks almost black, and his tail turns up towards his back, like a Mallard; a box with holes, to give them air, will keep them alive a night or two: they are good at ditting for Trouts and graylings: putting the thickest part of his body upon the point of the hook, under one of his wings, run it directly through and out at the other side, leaving him spited upon the hook, &c. See FLY-ANGLING. He is taken at all hours in this season.

**GREY-DRAKE-FLY.** The same in shape and dimensions with the green drake, but not in colour, being paler and of a more livid yellow and green, ribb'd with black quite down his body, with black shining wings; so diaphanous, that he is of no use for dabbling.

## G R E Y.



The GREY is thought to be the same kind of fish which in *Scotland* they call the GREY-LORD. In magnitude it differs but little from the Salmon, but the shape is very unlike, being considerably broader and thicker; the tail is indeed as large, but not forked. The body is every where stained with grey or ash coloured spots, from whence it

derives its name. The flesh is more delicious than that of the Salmon itself, and sells for almost double the price. He makes his progress from the sea into the rivers with extraordinary swiftness, and is possessed of very great strength and agility, surmounting almost all obstacles with the greatest ease. He is seldom taken and is therefore known but to few. He never advances into the rivers before the beginning of *August*, in order to spawn, and then commonly takes the advantage of a Flood; whereas the Salmon comes into the fresh water in every part of the spring.

It would be to no purpose to give directions how to take this fish with the angle, for he despises all kinds of baits, and in this he resembles the Fordich-trout, which is suspected to be of the same species, but for want of a more particular description of the latter, cannot certainly be determined.

**GROUND-BAIT.** Such places as you frequently angle at, you should once a week at least cast into, all sorts of corn boiled soft, Grains washed in blood, and dried, and cut into pieces, Snails, chopped worms, Fowls guts, Beasts guts, Livers of beasts; for Carp and Tench cannot feed too often, nor too much, and by this they are drawn to the place; and to keep them together, throw half an handful of ground malt now and then as you angle. For ground baits for every fish, see their names.

### G U D G E O N.



The GUDGEON is generally five or six inches long, sometimes in the *Mersey* eight or nine, of a smooth

smooth body, with very small scales. The back of it is dark, but the belly pale.

They are to be met with every where in rivers; but in some they grow to a larger size than others.

This fish spawns twice in a year; the first time about the latter end of *April* and the second in *November*.

His Flesh is very well tasted, of easy digestion, and very nourishing, insomuch that some think it no way inferior to a smelt.

He delights in sandy, gravelly bottoms, gentle streams, and small rivers. In the summer time he resorts to the shallows, and in the winter to the deeps.

He bites all day from the end of *March* till *Michaelmas*, but not till an hour after sun rise, nor longer than an hour before sun set. You may sometimes have full as good sport an hour after sun set as at any time in the day, especially if you angle in some place about a yard and an half deep, with a sandy bottom, below some scower, or near the place he bites at in the middle of the day.

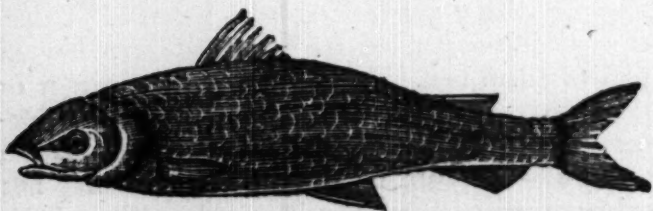
The principal baits are the small red worm, gilt tail, Brandling and a Meadow worm. He will likewise take a gentle Cod bait, brood of Wasps, or cowdung bob; but the small red worm is what pleases them best. If you can find a bridge or plank over a small river, chuse to angle underneath for Gudgeons, for they love the shade; and are so far from being shy, that you may not only appear in sight; but if you drive them from their place of resort, they will immediately return. A single hair Line, a fine taper rod, a Float, and a small hook, is what most use, and the bait to drag on the Ground.



When you angle for them in the shallows, rake up the sand or gravel with a rake or pole, and it will draw your Gudgeons about your bait ; when you have no such conveniency, throw in some handfuls of earth. Use a Float, and let your bait always touch or drag on the ground. Be not too hasty with them when they bite, because they will sometimes nibble a little before they take it, though they commonly bite pretty sure.

When you angle for them in a boat in the *Thames*, let the waterman rake the gravel up to draw the Gudgeons about you ; then plumb the ground, and bait your hook with a small well-scour-ed red worm ; by this method you will seldom fail of good sport. Your tackle as for Dare, with a yellow scoured guilt tail. He is caught in deeper water morning and evening till mid day. There have been an hundred dozen or more taken at *Thetwell Weir*, in the river *Mersey*, with angling in one day ; you may use two hooks at a Line at a time, and two rods is not amiss ; and then you may sometimes take *Pearch* or *Trout* instead of Gudgeons.

## G U I N I A D.



GUINIAD is a *Welsb* name for a fish that is bred in *Pemble-Meer* in *Merionethsbire*, and is the same with the *Ferra* of *Rondeletius*. The shape is not very much unlike that of a *Salmon*, and the

the usual Length is about twelve or thirteen<sup>n</sup> inches; the back is of a dusky colour, but the belly is white. The scales are of a middle size, the upper jaw is somewhat more prominent than the lower, and the mouth is much like that of a Herring.

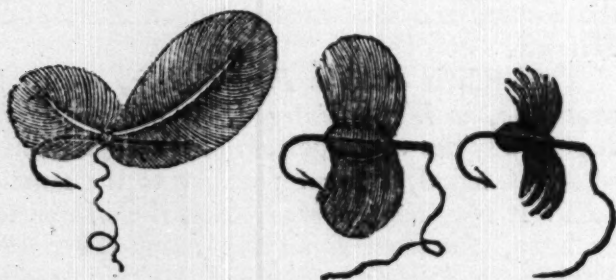
This fish is bred in *Pimble-Meer*, which lies near *Bala*, in *Welsb Linteged*, in *Merionethsbire*. It generally lies at the bottom of the Lake, among Water-Gladiol, a plant peculiar to these mountains: It is called *Gwinead*, from the whiteness of its body, the word signifying much the same as Whiting in *English*. There is one thing worthy of remark, which is, that though the river *Dee* runs through this lake, yet they are never found in its streams; and on the contrary, though Salmon are caught in the river they never enter the Lake; so strictly do all these animals keep to the haunts that nature has provided for them.

They are in season in summer: The flesh is white, and yet the taste is not much unlike that of a Trout: It is in the higher esteem because it is a Kind of rarity. This fish is likewise an inhabitant of Lake *Leman* near *Geneva*, among the *Alps*.

HACKLE, the best are the lapwing-topping, the feathers of a Hen's neck, (from which you will get the greatest variety,) and not much used, though they are the very finest hackle but the Lapwing's top, the same feathers of a Cock, the long feathers of a Swallows tail, the crown of a Peacock, a Wren's tail, a Pheasant's neck, a black Cock's ditto.

Hackles of different colours, from the Feathers of Moor Game, Pigeon, Coc's, &c. are very killing; which are made by fastening the end of the feather a little above the bent of the

hook, with silk of the colour of the feather, and turning the feather round the shank of the hook, with the silk up to the top of the shank, there to be fastened.



**HAIR.** In chusing good horse hair for your Line, be sure it be long, round and even, without any flaw or blemish. A young healthy Stone-horse, affords best. Scower it with soap and water, and keep it for use.

**HAWTHORN-FLY** is black, and found on Hawthorn trees; it is proper to dib for Trout. See **BLACK MAY-FLY**.

**HOOKS** should be long in the shank, and of a Compass inclining to roundness; but the point must stand even and straight, and the bending must be in the shank: for if the shank be strait, the point will hang outward; and though, when set on it, may stand right, yet after the taking of a few fish it will cause the hair at the end of the shank to stand bent, and consequently the point of the hook to hang directly upwards. The point of your hook should not be in a line with the shank, but a little sideways, and the more regularly bent the better.

Whether you angle at top or bottom, proportion your hooks for strength and compass to the number of hairs you angle with next your hook;

hook ; and use not a small hook to great Baits, nor a large hook to small Baits.

When you set on your hook, do it with small but strong silk, well rubbed with Shoemakers wax. If for a small hook, use the silk single. Lay your hair or grass on the inside of the hook ; for if it comes on the outside, the silk will be apt to cut and fret it asunder ; and it is not so convenient to strike fish : from a straw's breadth below the top of the hook, wrap the silk about the bare shank, until you come to the top of it : Then lay your Line on the inside, and whip with your silk downward, till you come almost to the bent of the hook, and then fasten it by turning over three or four times, and drawing it close ; which done, cut off the end of the Gildard, or Link, as nigh as you can to the twist.

Though perhaps the colour of the silk you whip with is not very material, yet it may not be amiss, when you angle with worms, to use red silk ; but for paste, cod-bait, and other whitish baits, to use white.

HORNETS. See WASPS.

HUMBLE-BEES. See WASPS.

JACKS. Small Pikes are so called till they are twenty-four inches long.

IMPEDIMENTS *to the Angler's Recreation.* The fault may be occasioned by his Tackle, as when the Lines or Hooks are too large ; when his Bait is dead, or decaying. If he angles at a wrong time of the day, when the fish are not in the humour of taking his Bait. If the fish have been frightened by the sight of him, or with his shadow. If the waters are thick, red, or white, being disturbed with sudden floods. If the weather be too cold. If the weather be too hot. If

it rains much, and fast. If it hails or snows. If it be tempestuous. If the wind blows high, or be in the East, or North. Want of patience, and variety of Baits.

INDIAN, or SEA-GRASS, makes excellent hook links ; and though some object to it, as being apt to grow brittle, and to kink in using, with proper management it is the best material for the purpose yet known, for large fish, especially if ordered in the following manner :

Take as many of the finest you can get, as you please, put them into any Vessel, and pour therein the scummed fat of a pot wherein flesh, but by no means salt, Meat has been boiled ; when they have lain three or four hours, take them out one by one, and stripping the Grease off with your finger and thumb, (but do not wipe them) stretch each Grass as long as it will yield ; coil them up in rings, and lay them by, and you will find them become near as small, full as round, and much stronger than the best single hairs you can get. To preserve them moist, keep them in a piece of bladder well oiled ; and, before you use them, let them soak about half an hour in water, or in your walk to the river side, put a length of it into your mouth.

If your Grass is coarse, it will fall heavily in the water, and scare away the fish ; on which account gut has the advantage. But after all, if your Grass be fine and round, it is the best thing you can use.

IVY-GUM. See UNGUENTS.

KINK. To Kink is a term used in Trowling, when the line is twisted between the top of the Rod and the Ring, through which it ought to run freely ; or when part of the Line twists about



about the other part that is coiled in your left hand. Silk lines are more apt to kink than hair ones.

# LAMPREY, or LAMPERN.



The LAMPREY is called, by Dr. Plot, *the Pride of the Isis*, and by others, SEVEN-EYES; and is found in the *Mersey*, which waters the fertile Banks of *Cheshire*.

It is a fish about ten or twelve inches long; on the back it is of a greyish black, but the belly is of a lively silver colour. Its mouth is round, and furnished with six or seven Teeth. On the top of the head there is a hole, as in the cetaceous kind; for as the Mouth, when the Lamprey adheres to a Rock or Stone, is entirely shut, there is a necessity for a hole to take in the Water which is discharged again by the Gills, or the seven holes placed on each side near the head. The belly rises and falls much in the same manner as in Animals that breathe.

The Liver is undivided, and the Capsula of the Heart almost Honey, which is purposely designed by nature as a guard or security for it, because this fish has no bones, not even so much as a back bone.

The River Lamprey, contrary to the manner of other fish, procreate their Species with their Bellies joined together, which is easy to be observed, because at that time they get into shallow Fords, where all that passes is visible enough.

The Flesh is of a soft glutinous Nature, and is generally eaten potted; and even then it is more agreeable to the Palate than healthful to the body. Their time of Spawning is in *April*.

They

They are the very best Bait for Night-hooks, cut in pieces about an inch and a quarter long.

There is another sort of this fish, which is called the **BLIND LAMPREY**, which is small and round, like a large Dew-worm, or Lob-worm. It has no Scales, and its body is divided into small Rings by transverse Lines, in the manner of Worms. These Rings are about eighty-four in number. The mouth is round, and always open, but it has neither teeth nor tongue. It has a hole on the head, and seven on each side instead of Gills, as in the other Species. A good bait for Chubs and Eels.

**LAMPREY-EEL** is of the same shape, but of a larger size than the Lamprey, for it is sometimes taken in the *Severn* three feet in length, and the Diameter of the body five inches. The skin is of a blackish colour, and full of palish angular spots; it is tough, but yet not taken off when dressed, as in Eels. It will hold a bit of Wood or a stone so firmly in its Mouth, that it cannot be taken out without difficulty. On the top of the head there is a white spot, and before it a small hole, encompassed with a Membrane, which rises up a small matter; the use of it is the same as in the Lamprey. The gills are concealed under the seven holes placed on each side. The edge of the Mouth is jagged, and adheres so closely to any thing, that some have supposed these Inequalities to be Teeth covered with Pitch; whereas the Teeth, properly so called, are placed on the inside of the Mouth, and the more remote they are, the larger. It has no Bones, but a Gristle down the back full of Marrow, which should be taken out before it is dressed. In short, they resemble a Lamprey in all things.

They

They lie chiefly in the sea, but come into the rivers to spawn, where they are found in great plenty. They are discovered by the froth that rises from them.

Their highest season is in *March*, when they first enter the rivers, and are full of spawn. In *April* they make holes in a gravelly bottom, where they deposit their spawn, and if they meet with a stone of two pound weight they remove it, and throw it out. They are seldom angled for purposely, but are sometimes caught with worms in angling for other fish. After spawning they hasten to the Sea, leaving their Brood, which hide in the sand, and in three Months grow to be about five inches long, and afford good sport to the School Boys, who throw them, together with the sand, upon the banks of the River.

**LANDING-NET.** A small Net extended upon a Ring or Hoop, and fastened to the end of a long manageable Pole. A Landing Hook is also necessary for safely bringing to shore large fish, which must have a screw to screw into a socket at the end of a Pole, which, when your fish is entangled, you clap into its mouth, and draw it to land. The latter is chiefly for Barbel, Salmon, and other strong fish.

**LAVE**, to throw the water out of a Pond, &c.

**LAWS of ANGLING, &c.** The Laws of *England*, being all public, Ignorance of their contents excuses no Offender. It will not be amiss therefore to say something of those which concern the Angler, that he may have a certain Knowledge, how, without offence, to demean himself amongst his Neighbours, when he goes about his Sport.

Whoever

Whoever fishes in the River *Severn* with, or shall make use of, any Engine or Device, whereby any Salmon, Trout, or Barbel, under the length appointed by the *Stat. 1 Eliz. Chap. 17.* shall be taken or killed, or shall fish with any Net for Salmon-peal, Pike, Carp, Trout, Barbel, Chub, or Grayling, the Mesh whereof shall be under two inches and a half square from knot to knot, or above twenty yards in length and two in breadth, or above fifty in length and six in breadth in the wing of the Net, in the said River, from *Ripplelock-Stake* to *Gloucester-Bridge*, or above sixty in length, below *Gloucester-Bridge*, and six yards in breadth in the wing of the net; or shall fish with more than one of these nets at once, or shall use any Device for taking the Fry of Eels, shall forfeit five shillings for every offence, and the fish so taken, and the instruments, to be divided between the prosecutor and the poor. 3 *Car. II.*

If any person shall keep any Net, Angle, Leap, Piche, or other Engine for taking fish, (except the Makers or Sellers of them, or the Owners or Occupiers of Rivers or Fisheries) such Engines, if they shall be found fishing without the consent of the Owner, shall be seized; and any person, by a Warrant under the hand and Seal of a Justice of Peace, may search the houses of persons prohibited and suspected, and seize to their own use, or destroy such Engines. 4 & 5 *W. & M. Cap. 23.*

No servant shall be questioned for killing a trespasser within his Master's liberty, who will not yield, if not out of former malice: Yet if the trespasser kills any such servant, it is murder. 21 *Eliz.*

None shall unlawfully break, cut down, cut out, or destroy any head or heads, dam or dams, of  
any

any Ponds, Pools, Moats, Stagnes, Stews, or separate Pits, wherein fish are, or shall happen to be put by the Owners or Possessors thereof; or shall wrongfully fish in the same, to the intent to destroy, kill, take, or steal away, any of the same fish against the mind of the Owners thereof, without licence of the Owner, on pain of suffering three months imprisonment, and to be bound to good behaviour for seven years after. And the party, in Sessions, or elsewhere, shall recover treble damages against the Delinquents. 5 *Eliz.*

None shall erect a Weir or Weirs along the Seashore, or in any Haven or Creek, or within five Miles of the mouth of any Haven or Creek, or shall willingly take or destroy any Spawn, Fry, or Brood of any Sea-fish, on pain of Ten Pounds, to be divided between the King and the Prosecutor. Neither shall any fish in any of the said places, with any Net of a less Mesh than three inches and a half between knot and knot, (except for Smoulds in *Norfolk* only) or with a Canvas-net, or other Engine, whereby the Spawn or Fry of Fish may be destroyed, on pain of forfeiting the said Net or Engine, and ten Shillings in Money, to be divided between the Poor and the Prosecutor. 3 *Jac. Cap. 12.*

By the Statute of 17 *Rich. II. Cap. 9.* Justices of the Peace shall be Conservators of the Statute of *Westm. 2. Cap. 47.* and 13 *Rich. II. Cap. 19.* and shall have power to search all Weirs, lest by their straitness the Fry of Fish may be destroyed. And the said Justices shall have power to appoint and swear under Conservators, and to hear and determine Offences of this kind, and to punish the Offenders by Imprisonment and Fine, whereof the Under-Conservator which informs, is to have



have the half. The Mayor or Wardens of *London* have, by the same Statute, like Power in the *Thames*, from *Staines* to *London*, and in *Medway* as far as the City Grant extends. And every Justice of Peace before whom such Offender shall be convicted, may cut in Pieces, and destroy all and every the Nets and Engines whatsoever, wherewith the Offender is apprehended.

Barbel is not to be taken under twelve Inches long; the penalty is twenty Shillings, the Engine, and the Fish.

Herrings are not to be sold before the Fishermen come to Land, and must not be brought into *Tarmouth Haven* between *Michaelmas* and *Martinmas*; the penalty is Imprisonment, and forfeiture of the Herrings.

Lobsters must not be sold under eight Inches from the Peak of the Nose to the end of the middle Fin of the Tail; the forfeiture is one Shilling for each Lobster.

Pike must not be taken under ten Inches; the forfeiture is twenty Shillings, the Fish, and the Engine they are taken with.

Salmon is not to be sent to *London* to Fishmongers, or their Agents, weighing less than six Pounds; and every Person that buys or sells such, shall be liable to forfeit five Pounds, or be sent to hard labour for three Months.

In the Rivers *Severn*, *Dee*, *Thame*, *Ware*, *Tees*, *Ribble*, *Mersey*, *Dun*, *Air*, *Ouze*, *Swale*, *Caldor*, *Eure*, *Darwent*, and *Trent*, no Person is to lay Nets, Engines, or other Devices, whereby the Spawn or small Fry of Salmon, or any Keeper or Shedder Salmon, under eighteen Inches long from the Eye to the middle of the Tail, shall be taken, killed or destroyed. Nor shall they make, erect, or set any Bank, Dam, Hedge, Stank, or Nets,  
cross

cross the said Rivers, to take the Salmon, or hinder them from going to spawn: nor shall they kill Salmon in the said Rivers between the Twelfth of *August* and the Twenty third of *November*, or fish with unlawful Nets, under the penalty of five Pounds for every Offence: And for want of distress, to be sent to hard labour for not less than one Month, nor more than three Months.

Those that use any Net or Engine to destroy the Spawn or Fry of Fish, or take Salmon or Trout out of Season, or the latter less than eight Inches long, or use any Engine to take Fish otherways than by Angling, or with a Net of two Inches and a half Mesh, forfeit twenty Shillings a Fish, and the Net or Engine.

Those that sell, offer, or expose to Sale, or exchange for any other Goods, Bret or Turbot under sixteen Inches long, Brill or Pearl under fourteen, Codlin twelve, Whiting six, Bass and Mullet twelve, Sole, Plaice, and Dab, eight, and Flounder seven, from the Eyes to the utmost extent of the Tail, are liable to forfeit twenty Shillings by distress, or to be sent to hard labour for not less than six, or more than fourteen Days, and to be whipped.

Every one who between the first of *March* and the last of *May* shall do any Act whereby the Spawn of Fish shall be destroyed, shall forfeit forty Shillings and the Instrument.

EXTRACT from the FISH-ACT of 1765.

No one shall enter into any Park or Paddock fenced in and inclosed, or into any Garden, Orchard, or Yard, adjoining or belonging to any Dwelling house, in or through which Park or Paddock, Garden, Orchard, or Yard, any River or Stream of Water shall run or be, or wherein  
shall

shall be any River, Stream, Pond, Pool, Moat, Stew, or other Water, and by any Ways, Means, or Device whatsoever, shall steal, take, kill, or destroy, any Fish bred, kept, or preserved, in any such River or Stream, Pond, Pool, Moat, Stew, or other Water aforesaid, without the consent of the Owner or Owners thereof; or shall be aiding or assisting in the stealing, taking, killing, or destroying, any such Fish as aforesaid; or shall receive or buy any such Fish, knowing the same to be so stolen or taken as aforesaid; and being thereof indicted within six Calendar Months next after such Offence or Offences shall have been committed, before any Judge or Justices of Gaol Delivery for the County wherein such Park or Pad-dock, Garden, Orchard, or Yard, shall be, and shall on such Indictment be, by Verdict, or his or their own Confession or Confessions, convicted of any such Offence or Offences as aforesaid, the Person or Persons so convicted shall be transported for seven Years.

And, for the more easy and speedy apprehending and convicting of such Person or Persons as shall be guilty of any of the Offences before-mentioned, be it further enacted by the Authority aforesaid, That in case any Person or Persons shall, at any Time after the first Day of *June*, commit or be guilty of any such Offence or Offences, as are herein before-mentioned, and shall surrender himself to any one of his Majesty's Justices of the Peace in and for the County where such Offence or Offences shall have been committed; or, being apprehended and taken, or in Custody for such Offence or Offences, or on any other Account, and shall voluntarily make a full Confession thereof, and a true Discovery, upon Oath, of the Person or Persons who was or were his Accomplice  
or

or Accomplices in any of the said Offences, so as such Accomplice or Accomplices may be apprehended and taken, and shall, on the Trial of such Accomplice or Accomplices, give such Evidence of such Offence or Offences, as shall be sufficient to convict such Accomplice or Accomplices thereof; such Person making such Confession and Discovery, and giving such Evidence as aforesaid, shall, by virtue of this Act, be pardoned, acquitted, and discharged, of and from the Offence or Offences so by him confessed as aforesaid.

That in case any Person or Persons shall take, kill, or destroy, or attempt to take, kill, or destroy, any Fish, in any River or Stream, Pond, Pool, or other Water (not being in any Park or Paddock, or in any Garden, Orchard, or Yard, adjoining or belonging to any Dwelling-house, but shall be in any other inclosed Ground which shall be private Property) every such Person, being lawfully convicted thereof by the Oath of one or more credible Witness or Witnesses, shall forfeit and pay, for every such Offence, the Sum of Five Pounds, to the Owner or Owners of the Fishery of such River or Stream of Water, or of such Pond, Pool, Moat, or other Water: And it shall and may be lawful to and for any one or more of his Majesty's Justices of the Peace of the County, Division, Riding, or Place, where such last-mentioned Offence or Offences shall be committed, upon Complaint made to him or them, upon Oath, against any Person or Persons, for any such last-mentioned Offence or Offences, to issue his or their Warrant or Warrants to bring the Person or Persons so complained of, before him or them; and, if the Person or Persons so complained of shall be convicted of any of the said Offences last-mentioned, before such Justice or Justices,

tices, or any other of his Majesty's Justices of the same County, Division, Riding, or Place aforesaid, by the Oath or Oaths of one or more credible Witness or Witnesses, which Oath such Justice or Justices are hereby authorized to administer; or by his or their own Confession; then, and in such Case, the Party so convicted shall, immediately after such Conviction, pay the said Penalty of Five Pounds, hereby before imposed for the Offence or Offences aforesaid, to such Justice or Justices before whom he shall be so convicted, for the Use of such Person or Persons as the same is hereby appointed to be forfeited and paid unto; and, in Default thereof, shall be committed by such Justice or Justices to the House of Correction, for any time not exceeding six Months, unless the Money forfeited shall be sooner paid.

Provided nevertheless, That it shall and may be lawful to and for such Owner or Owners of the Fishery of such River or Stream of Water, or of such Pond, Pool, or other Water; wherein any such Offence or Offences last-mentioned shall be committed as aforesaid, to sue and prosecute for and recover the said Sum of Five Pounds, by Action of Debt, Bill, Plaint, or Information, in any of his Majesty's Courts of Record at *Westminster*; and in such Action or Suit, no Essoign, Wager of Law, or more than one Imparlance shall be allowed; provided that such Action or Suit be brought, or commenced, within six Calendar Months next after such Offence or Offences shall have been committed.

Provided always, and be it further enacted by the Authority aforesaid, That nothing in this Act shall extend, or be construed to extend, to subject or make liable any Person or Persons to the penalties of this Act, who shall fish, take, or kill,  
and



and carry away, any Fish, in any River or Stream of Water, Pond, Pool, or other Water, wherein such Person or Persons shall have a just Right or Claim to take, kill, or carry away, any such Fish.

**LEAD.** To lead your Line, do it with a Shot cloven, and then closed exactly on it, not above two on a Line, and about two Inches distant from each other, and the lowest seven or eight Inches from the Hook; but for the Running-line, either in clear or muddy Water, nine or ten Inches, and in a sandy bottom full of Wood, shape your Lead in the Diamond fashion, or that of a Barley-corn or oval, and bring the ends very close and smooth to the Line; but make it black, or the brightness will scare the Fish.

**LEADING of LINES.** The small round Pellet or Lead-shot is best, especially for stony Rivers, and the Running Line.

**LEAP.** Fish are said to leap when they spring out of the Water, which is peculiar to Trout and Salmon.

**LEASH.** Three; as a Leash of Jack, Pike, Trout, &c.

**LEATHER-MOUTHED.** Leather-mouthed Fish are such as have their Teeth in their Throat; as the Chub, Barbel, Gudgeon, Carp, &c.

**LEDGER-BAIT.** A Bait that is fixed or made to rest in one certain Place, when you shall be absent. It is best to be a living one, a Fish or Frog. Of Fish, a Roach or Dace is best. Cut off the Fin on the Back, and make an Incision with a sharp Knife, between the Head and the Fin on the Back, and put the Arming-wire of your Hook into it, and carrying it along his Back, unto the Tail, betwixt the Skin and the Body,  
draw

draw out your Arming at another Scar near the Tail, and then tie him about it with Thread.

LINES made of a forrel, chesnut, or brown coloured Hair, are best for Ground-angling, especially in muddy Water, they being not only the colour of the Gravel or Sand, but of the Water itself. The white and grey, or dusky white Hair, is for clear Rivers and Waters. Your Hair thus suited is not discernable by the Fish, and consequently will not scare them from your Bait, if your Lines are but of a just and due thickness.

It being impossible always to have natural Hair of a colour suitable to the Season and Water, Anglers supply this defect by dying it. To make a Brown, boil Walnut-leaves in Chamber-lye; or take Water, and dissolve some Alum in it; or mix strong Ale and Salt: In either of these soak the Hair well.

The inner Bark of a Crab-tree boiled in Water with some Alum, makes a pure yellow colour, which is good when the Weeds rot, for thereby the Line looks like the Weeds.

Another Yellow may be made with two Quarts of small Ale, and three Handfuls of Walnut-leaves stamped therein. Let the Hair remain till it is as deep as you desire it.

N. B. The Hair you use for dying should be the best white you can get. And observe, that as the Weeds rot away in the Autumnal Months, *September, October, and November*, the yellow is then best. The russet or brown serves all the Winter, and the bright natural Hair suits best for Summer.

You must furnish yourself with an Instrument for twisting your Line: Then cut off near an Haddful of the bottom part of the Hair; turn the

top

top of one hair to the tail of the other, which will cause every part to be equally strong; knot them at one end, and divide them into three parts; twist every part by itself, and knot them together, then put that end into the cleft of your twisting-instrument, four inches shorter than your hair; twine your warp one way alike, and fasten them in three clefts, alike strait, then take out the other end, and let it twine which way it will, then strain it a little, and knot it before you take it out. When you have prepared as many links as will suffice to make your line long enough, you must then tie them together in a water knot, Dutch knot, or Weaver's knot. Then cut off the short ends about the breadth of a straw from the knot, and thus the line will be even, and fit for fishing. You may make the top of your line and indeed all of it, except two yards next the hook, of a coarser hair. Always let the top of your line, whether in muddy or clear waters, be made of white hair, because the motion of the line when the fish bite, will be far more discernable. Never strain your hairs before they are made into a line, for then they will shrink when used.

To make the Line handsome, and to twist the hair even and neat, gives it strength: for if one hair is long, and another short, the short one receiving no strength from the long one, consequently breaks; and then the other, as too weak, breaks also. Therefore twist them slowly, and in twisting, keep them from entangling, which hinders their right plaiting or bedding together: twist them neither too hard nor too slack, but even, so that they may twine one with another, and no more, when you have tied your lengths together with the water knot, cut off the short ends

ends about the breadth of a straw, from the knot, that it may not undo in the using.

Do not arm, fix, or whip hooks to any Line, either for ground or fly angling, that consists of more than three or four links, at the most. The top of the uppermost link having a small loop, or water noose, you may fix it to any line, and as easily remove it ; there being another water-noose at the bottom of your Line.

To angle for Trouts, Graylings, and Salmon-Smelts, with the Dub-fly ; let the two first Links next the hook be but of one Hair a piece : but the hair must be strong, and of the thick ends only, and chosen for the purpose. The next two Links of two hairs, and next to these one of three hairs ; at the top of which have a water noose, or loop, to put your line to ; which lowermost link consists of three hairs, and has another water noose at bottom, or hook link, to fix your fly to. Then let two of the next links of your Line be four hairs, and so proceed, by increasing one or two hairs till you come to six or seven hairs at the top, let the single hairs, or three or four of the next links be of a white, or light colour.

The artificial-fly Line should be very strong at the top ; by this means any young angler will cast a fly well, and quickly become an accurate artist ; and if he chances to fasten his hook, and cannot come to loosen it, he will not lose above one Link, or two at most, though he pull to break it ; because the line is so strong at the upper end. You may angle with stronger Lines at the cast-fly than at ground, in a clear water for the Trout. For in a clear water at ground for Trouts, Graylings, and Salmon Smelts, never use a line made otherwise than with a single hair

hair at hook, and so on as above directed ; only never have above four hairs in any one link of the line. At the bottom of every line have a small water-noose, or loop, that you may hang on a hook of any size, whipt to a line, consisting of two or three links.

In a muddy water, or one discoloured by rain, the running line should be half the length of the rod, more or less, and the two lowermost links of three hairs a-piece. Next should be a link of four hairs, with a loop or water-noose, to fasten it to another of the same number, having likewise a water-noose at its bottom. Then proceed with links, of five or six hairs a-piece, to the end. The three lowermost links, or Gildards, should be of a sorrel, brown, or chesnut Colour. Your Cane or Reed-rod must have a top, neither too stiff nor too slender. The Rod to be about three yards and a half long, and the top about one yard and a half, or two yards, of Hazel, either in one or two pieces, or five or six inches of Whalebone, made round, smooth and taper. All this will make the rod five yards and a half long, or five yards at least.

The line should have more lead in a great, troublesome, rough river, than in one that is smaller and more quiet : As near as may be, always just so much as will sink the bait to the bottom, and permit its motion, without any violent jogging on the ground. Carry the top of your Rod even with your hand, beginning at the head of the Stream, and letting the bait run downwards as far as the Rod and Line will permit, the Lead dragging and rolling on the ground. No more of the Line must be in the Water than will permit the Lead to touch the  
G bottom ;



bottom; for you are to keep the Line as strait as possible, yet so as not to raise the Lead from the bottom. When you have a bite, you may perceive it by your hand and the point of your Rod and Line: Then strike gently, and strait upwards; first allowing the fish, by a little slackening the line, a small time to take in the bait. In a clear water, indeed, it has been found best to strike at the first biting of the fish, when you angle for Trout, Graylings, or Salmon Smelts.

There are (if any Credit may be given to Report) many who in *Italy* will catch Swallows thus, but more especially Martens. This Bird Angler stands on the top of a Steeple to do it, and with a line twice as long as I have spoken of. A Heron, that constantly frequented one place, has been caught flying, with a hook baited with a big Minnow, or small Gudgeon. The line and hook must be strong, and tied to some loose Staff, so big that she cannot fly away with it, and the line not exceeding two yards.

LINE-CASES, the most convenient are with twelve or fourteen partitions therein, made of the finest thin Parchment, and a flap to cover over the edges, to prevent the losing any thing out of them. In the several partitions, keep hooks ready whipt to lines of two or three gildards in length, and ready leaded. Likewise spare links, Lines of all lengths or sorts, Silks of all sorts and colours, and single strong hairs. These cases lie in a small room in the Pocket, and yet in one of them you may put all your tackle ready fixed for the Running line in a muddy or a clear water; in another, all the tackling for ground-angling with the float; in another, which must be large, the angling tackle for great fish, as Chub, Barbel, great Salmon; in another, your angling tackle  
for

for Pike, which must likewise be very large: so that when you travel from home, you may angle any where for most sorts of fish at ground, if you carry with you but a good rod made of hazle, and the pieces put into each other, which will serve you also for a walking staff.

LINK. A Link is two or more hairs twisted together, and a Line is made of several Links, fastened together with a Fisherman's knot. Never make a Link of two hairs, as they are no smaller till three.

## L O A C H.



The LOACH resembles a Gudgeon in colour. Its Body is smooth, soft and slippery, with no discernible scales.

They begin to spawn in *April* among the weeds but as they do not all spawn at the same time they are always in season, and are most commonly swallowed alive, as being very restorative.

They are generally found in small, swift, clear brooks, and lie under stones, pieces of wood, and such like things, which they use as a harbour.

You may angle for him close to the ground with a very small hook, and a proportionable red-worm. There is no art in taking them, for all you have to do is to prevent them from running under such places as will endanger your tackle, and therefore they are to be pulled out immediately. They are good baits for Pike, Perch, Eel, and large Trout,

**LOAD.** To put shot, &c. to your line. The best method to split a shot is to lay it on the inside of a knife-haft, and as you shut it you may split it what depth you please without danger of cutting it through.

**MAGGOT-BREEDING.** Take a Cow's liver, lights, or lungs, or a Sheep's head (but livers are the best). After it is scored with a knife, hang it up and cover it, but not too close, for the flies will blow it better covered than hanging in the open air. In two or three days after you perceive the Maggots to be alive, take down the liver, and put it into a barrel or large earthen pan, and there let it remain till you think the Maggots are of full growth. Then take a sufficient quantity of Bran, in proportion to the size of the liver, and in three or four days the first brood will come out of the liver into the Bran, and there scour themselves. Then in three or four days more take a stick and run through the liver, and hang it across the barrel or pot, when the latter brood will soon drop out into the Bran, and scour themselves for your use.

This is the best method to prevent their turning to seemingly dead blackish Grubs, and from thence to Flies: A fly-blow will become a Grub, and then a Fly, which will produce other Flies, in the space of fifteen days.

If you are willing to preserve Maggots all the winter, you must get two or three Livers about the beginning of *November*; and, if it be a favourable season, the Flies will blow them as strongly as in the hotter weather, in order to preserve their kind against the next summer. These are to be managed in the same manner as the other, only kept somewhat warmer till they come to their full growth, and then throw in a good quantity of  
Bran,

Bran, which will secure them from Frost in winter : They are to be kept in a Cellar or some dampish place, in the Barrel or Pot they were bred in. Thus you may preserve them all the winter, and at any time have them ready for use.

MAGGOT-FISHING begins with *May*, and continues till *Christmas* ; but the best time for taking the Grayling in Rivers, is from the middle of *August* till *November*. Maggots are constantly of use in fishing ; for all sorts of Fresh water Fish (except Salmon, Pike, and Shad) will feed upon this bait in a very plentiful manner. It is the best bait for quickness of sport ; for upon throwing in a few handfuls of them, by little and little, before you begin to fish, you will by that means draw the Fish together, and they will pick up the baits from the bottom, just as the Poultry will pick up their food from the ground.

It was formerly the practice to bait the hook with the Moggot, and to bait the holes with other sorts of ground baits : which could afford but little sport ; for neither Trout, Grayling, nor Pearch will eat Grains, stewed Malt, Pastes, or any such dead baits, and therefore it is necessary to bait the holes with the same you put upon your hook ; living baits, when thrown into the water, being much more tempting than dead ones, and make the Fish more eager. If you loose a hook in a Grayling's mouth, there is great probability that in five minutes you recover it, by using more caution the next time you strike ; for when the fish are come in shoals to your baiting-place, the largest Fish presses most forward, and soonest catches your bait. Near *Windfor* some gentlemen were angling in the *Thames* when it was clear, and apparently drew all the Fish that swam within forty yards of the feeding place, by throwing

in Maggots. At the same time two gentlemen eager in the sport struck away two Hooks in two fishes mouths, but perceived that those very fish kept their ground, bit again, and were caught, weighing four pounds.

When you fish in rivers with this bait, your line should be finer than for Pool fishing, and leaded pretty heavy: The lower link must be a single hair, or a fine silk worm gut; and always observe that your shot drags upon the bottom, especially in a stream.

**MAY-FLY.** It is found by the side of every river. See **FLIES** and **ARTIFICIAL FLIES**. It is bred of the Cad-worm, or Earth-bob, and is an excellent bait for a Trout, or a Chub, five or six upon a Hook, either at top or under water; it is likewise a good bait for Dace, either to dib with, or under water, with a shot just sufficient to sink it; you are to angle about some willow Bush (on which they are usually found) frequently raising your bait, and letting it gently sink again. At first this fly makes its appearance on the water, and till the fish are glutted with them you will not fail to have very good sport by any of the above methods.

**MID-WATER-FISHING** is with any live fish-bait, or worm, or other bait, at the middle or somewhat lower, and sometimes again within a foot of the surface, for Trout, Pike, Pearch, or Chub. If you angle for the latter with five or six Caterpillars of sundry sorts on a hook at a time, you may take very large ones; they are an excellent bait.



M U D  
M I N N O W, or P I N K.

127



The *MINNOW* is twice as small as a *Gudgeon*, its greatest length being about three inches.

In *April* they cast their spawn in sandy or gravelly Fords, where the Current is swift and strong.

This small Fish is usually caught for a bait, in order to take *Pearch*, *Pike*, *Trout*, or *Salmon*. He begins to make his appearance in *March*, and continues visible till *September*, when he retires to the *Mud*, *Weeds*, and woody places, for security. He never stirs in the night, nor in dark windy weather, because the *Trout* at such times is ranging about for food.

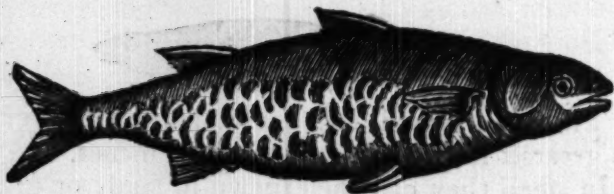
His time of biting on a fair day is from an hour after Sun-rising until an hour after Sun-set. His baits are small worms of any sort; and he is caught at mid-water, or at the bottom. In angling for him it will be proper to use a float.

**MOTH.** There is a great one not unlike an *Owl*, with whitish wings on the inside, and yellowish on the outside and body; they are seen flying in Gardens of a summer's evening, and are a sure killing bait, if you dib for *Chubs* with them, particularly in the evening.

To make the wings of an artificial one, use the brown feather of a *Mallard*, very large; make the body with the hair of a yellowish-coloured *English Land Spaniel*, and a white *Cock's* hackle over it.

**MUDDLE.** To muddle, is to stir up the mud or sand with a pole, &c. when you fish for *Gudgeons*.

## M U L L E T.



The MULLET is in shape much like a Dare, and has a flat head with a sharp snout ; and when he is largest his size is above a foot and a half long.

He is said to live upon Weeds and Mud ; however it is certain that he abstains from Fish.

In the beginning of the summer he comes into the Rivers in the south of *England* every tide, and returns back with it. The river *Axe* in *Devonshire*, and *Arundel* in *Suffex*, are famous for this fish. In the *Mersey* they continue all Day, and in hot weather several Days, even at neap, or no tides ; they are commonly seen about large Sandbanks, in shallow water, in very great shoals, and will even leap out of one hole into another that is surrounded with sand, and will spring over a Net two feet above water, as the Fishermen are drawing for them in the *Mersey*. They never swim farther up a river than where the tide runs salt.

The *Italians* make a pickle with the spawn, which they call *Botargo*, in the following manner. They take the whole Roes, and cover them with salt for about four or five hours, then they press them between two planks for a day and a night ; after which they wash them, and set them in the sun to dry for thirteen or fourteen days, taking them in the night-time. They raise the Appetite, provoke Thirst, and give a true relish to Wine.

They

They are bold feeders, and are to be caught with most flies that allure the Trout. Within two feet of the bottom they will take the Lobworm, or the Marsh worm; but your Tackle must be strong, for they struggle hard for their Lives.

**NIBBLE.** A fish is said to nibble, when he does not take the Bait freely.

**NIGHT-ANGLING,** for the Trout. You must have a strong Line and large Hook, always proportioning your Hook to your Bait, and he must have Time to gorge it. He will take almost any Bait.

**NIGHT-HOOKS** should be thus laid: Procure a small Cord sixteen Yards long, and at equal distances tie to it five or six Hempen Lines, of the thickness of the Trowling-line, about eighteen Inches long a-piece, fastening them in such a manner as you may easily remove or put them to again. To each of these whip a Hook, and bait it with a Minnow, Loach, or Bull-head, his Gill-fins cut off; or, for want of them, with a small Gudgeon, a small Roach, a piece of Seven Eyes, of about an Inch, and the brightest coloured you can get, which is much the most preferable Bait for Eels, or one of the small Brood of Eels; or with Beef, or the Pitch and Marrow in an Ox or Cow's Back-bone. If you bait with any Fish, put the point of the Hook in at the Tail and out at the Mouth, the Head of the Fish resting on the Hook's bent; and cover the point of the Hook with a small Worm: Then at one end of the Cord fasten a Stone or a Lead Weight of about two Pounds, and throw it across the River in some still deep, or at the tail or side of a deep Stream. Fasten the other end to some Bough or Stick on the Water-bank you stand on; and in the Morn-

ing you will seldom fail to have Fish ensnared. Use a great fish Needle to draw the Line through the bait, and out at its tail, and then let it slip down to the Hook's bent, the Head being downwards, tying the tail to the Line with thread, and the top of the Hemp Line to the Cord.

Eels, Chubs, large Trouts, and Pike, are taken this way; but if you lay for Pike, keep the bait with a float about a foot from the bottom. For other Fish let it touch the bottom. Your great Lob-worm is as good a bait as any for Night-hooks; only if you lay them in Rivers, perhaps the small Fish may pull your bait off, and miss being taken. Therefore Minnows, Loaches, Bull-heads, small Gudgeons, Bleak, small Roach, small Dace, Seven-eyes, &c. are the most certain to succeed; but if you bait with Worm, the Links you fix to your main Line ought to be of Silk, for a Worm will rot a Line made of Flax or Hemp in twenty-four hours, so as an Eel of a quarter of a pound will break it.

OAK-FLY is known also by the names of the Ash-fly and the Woodcock-fly; in *Shropshire* it is called the Cannon or Downhill fly; and in *Lancashire* the Down-looker. It holds good from the beginning of *May* to the end of *August*, it is of a brownish colour, and usually found on the body of an Oak, or Ash, standing with its head downwards towards the root of the Tree, and is a very good bait for a Trout. And to make speedy work, put it long ways on the hook, and at the point of a Cod-bait, and let them sink six inches or a foot into the water, raise it gently, and having a short dibbing Line, you need not fear Trouts in clear Water; and instead of a Cod bait, if you have it not, you may use an Oak worm or Green-grub, dub it with black Wool and Isabella coloured Mohair,

Mohair, and bright brownish Bears Hair warped on with yellow Silk, but the head of an Ash colour; others dub it with an Orange tawney and black ground; others with blackish Wool and Gold-twist, the Wings of the brown of a Mallard's Feather: The body may be made of a Bittern's Feather and a Woodcock's Wing. A Bittern's Feather makes a good Wing.

**OBSERVATIONS.** When the Nights prove dark, cloudy, or windy, and the Moon shines little, or not at all, next Day there will be little or no sport, except at small ones: For Trout and great Fish then range about to devour others.

In small, clear, and shallow Brooks, where the Mills stand and keep up the water, you will seldom catch Fish at Ground or Fly, except about the Pen; for Fish, especially Trouts, dare not then come out of their hold, by reason of the shallowness of the Water, and that the water then brings no Aliment with it.

Observe, that when you angle in a clear water, either for Trouts, Graylings, or Salmon Smelts, if you have so much dexterity as to do it with a single hair for two Links next your Hook, you will certainly catch three Trouts for one, against any that angle with three hairs next the Hook. And though you may now and then lose a great trout by his breaking your line, yet if you had not been so small tackled, ten to one he had never bit, and the number of Bites will compensate the loss. You may fish with less hazard at bottom than at top with fine tackle, because a Trout at Fly-shoots with a rapid Agility at your bait, and from you when he hath taken it, with his head generally downwards; but at the ground, or mid-water, he takes the bait gently, and glides away far more leisurely.

Fish



Fish take all sorts of baits most eagerly and freely, and with the least suspicion, when you present them in such order and manner as Nature affords them, or as the Fish themselves usually take them. Some are peculiar to certain Countries and Rivers, of which every angler may, in his own place, make proper observation. Several of the foregoing baits may be taken in some particular rivers, and not in others; and the same baits are taken earlier in some rivers than others, and sooner or later in some years than others.

Wherever you can find large shoals of Fish, (except about their Spawning-time,) they will bite if you use proper baits; fish with a fine line in a strong current, which will require a less quantity of Lead; if you angle for small Fish at ground, use a line of single hairs and a float made of Sea-gull feathers. Whilst you are angling, do not give them more baiting than will keep them together; and if you intend to angle in the Morning, bait well the Evening before; and likewise in the Morning, if you intend to angle in the Evening.

The best hours, in general esteem, to angle in, a clear day and water, from about the 10th of *April* until the end of *August*, is from Sun-rise till half an hour after ten o'clock, and from half an hour after two o'clock until Sun-set. But if the day be dark, cloudy, gloomy, or lowring, especially if at such a time also a gentle breeze blow from any quarter but the East, you will not fail of catching Fish in any hour of the day. But in *March*, the beginning of *April*, *September*, and all the winter months, you may angle all the day, from about one hour after Sun-rise, until about half an hour before Sun-set, either in a muddy or clear

clear water; and you may even angle all the day in a muddy water, from the middle of *April* until the end of *August*, though early in the Morning and late in the Evening are best.

When Trouts leap out of the water, and Pikes shoot in pursuit of other Fish, they will bite well, if you angle with tackle and baits proper for the Season and Fish.

When floods have carried away all the filth that the Rain had washed from the higher grounds into the river, so that the river keepeth its usual bounds, and is of a wheyish, chesnut, brown, or Ale-colour, it is then good to angle at ground.

A little before any Fish spawn, they come into the gravelly, sandy Fords, to rub and loosen their Bellies, and then and there they bite well.

At the conflux of rivers, and where it ebbs and flows, Fish sometimes bite very well, but in the ebb most usually; and also at the pointing of a tide.

In *February*, *March*, the beginning of *April*, *September*, and all the winter months, Fish bite best in the Sun-shiny, warm, and middle part of the day, no wind stirring, and the air clear.

Fish rise best at the Fly after a shower that has not muddied the water, yet has beaten the Gnats and Flies into the river. You may, in such a shower, observe them to rise much, if you can but endure the rain.

In calm, clear, and Star-light nights, especially if the Moon shines, great Fish, Trouts especially, are as wary and fearful, as in dark, gloomy, and windy days; but if the next day prove dark, cloudy, gloomy, and windy, and the water in order, you may be sure of sport, if there be plenty of Fish in the river.

Morning

Morning and evening are best for ground-line, for a Trout, or other Fish, in clear weather and water: But in dark, cloudy weather, or muddy water, you may angle at ground all day.

Great Fish, as Trouts in particular, feed most in the night, especially it is be dark, or windy; and they bite not the next day, unless it proves dark or windy, and then a little in the Afternoon only.

All Fish bite keener and better, especially in Summer, in swift, rapid, stony, and gravelly rivers, than in those that run gently, and glide in slime and mud.

In little brooks that fall into larger rivers, where the tide comes up only in fresh waters, or waters a little brackish; if you begin at the mouth of such brooks, just as the tide comes in, and go up with the head of the tide, and return with the ebb, you may take many good Trouts; and if the tide do not foul the water, they will rise at the Fly; or if you come immediately after a shower that hath raised the water, or just as any Mill-water begins to come down, and so proceed with the course of the current, Trouts will bite eagerly, because, expecting the water to bring down food with it, they come forth to seek it.

When rains raise the rivers, and keep them for some time above their ordinary height, Trouts leave the larger rivers, and retire into such small brooks as are almost dry in hot Summers; and in such brooks you should then angle for them; and in the river where such brooks discharge themselves, at the fall of a flood you'll usually have good sport. They generally quit the great rivers at *Michaelmas*, and go into small rivulets to spawn, and are frequently there destroyed by

by idle and disorderly fellows, with groping, or otherwise, which does more injury to the breed of Fish, than all the Summer's Angling.

**PANNIER.** A Conveniency made of slit Osiers, or Withy, to be the more light, in which an Angler carries all the tools and tackle he makes use of.

**PASTES** are variously compounded, almost according to the Angler's own fancy; but there should always be a little Cotton Wool, shaved Lint, or fine Flax, to keep the parts of it together, that it may not fall off the hook. White Bread and Honey will make a proper paste for Carp and Tench. Fine white Bread alone, with a little water, will serve for Roach and Dace; and Mutton Suet and soft new Cheese for a Barbel. Strong Cheese with a little Butter, and coloured yellow with Saffron, will make a good winter paste for a Chub.

Other pastes are made as follow: Take Bean-flour, or, if that is not to be got, Wheat-flour, and the tenderest part of the leg of a young Rabbit, Whelp, or Kitten; as much Virgin-wax and Sheep-suet: Beat them in a mortar till they are perfectly incorporated; then, with a little clarified Honey, temper them before the fire into a paste. Some omit the Bean and Wheat-flour, others the Virgin-wax and Sheep-suet, only when they use it for Carp.

Take Sheep's blood, Cheese, fine white Bread, and clarified Honey: Make all into a paste.

Take Cherries without stones, Sheep's blood, fine Bread, and Saffron to colour it with, and make a Paste.

Take fat old Cheese, strong Rennet, Mutton Kidney-suet, Wheat-flour, and Anniseed-water; beat them all into a paste. If it be for Chubs, add some roasted Bacon.

Take

Take the fattest old Cheese, the strongest Rennet, Mutton Kidney-suet, and Turmeric reduced into a fine powder; work all into a paste. Add the Turmeric only till the paste becomes of a very fine yellow Colour. This is excellent for Chub, as are also the two following.

Take some of the oldest and strongest *Cheshire* Cheese you can get, the crumb of a fine Manchet, or *French* Roll, and some Sheep's Kidney Suet: put these in a Mortar, and beat them into a paste, adding as much clarified Honey as will be sufficient to sweeten it.

Take a few Shrimps or Prawns, pull off their Shells and Skins, and beat the clear Meat in a Mortar, with a little Honey, till it becomes a paste. When you bait with a piece of this, let the point of the Hook be but lightly covered.

Take fine Flour and Butter, with Saffron to colour it, and make a paste for Roach and Dace.

But among all the variety of pastes, there is none so often used as that simple and plain one made with white Bread and Milk, which requires only clean hands.

The following observations concerning pastes may be of use to a young angler, being all founded on experience.

In *September*, and all the winter months, when you angle for Chub, Carp and Bream, with paste, let the bait be as big as a large Hazel-nut: But for Roach and Dace, the bigness of an ordinary Bean is sufficient.

You may add to any Paste, *Asa-fœtida*, Oil of Polypody of the Oak, Oil of Ivy, Oil of Peter, Gum Ivy, and many other things, which sometimes wonderfully increase your sport.

When you angle with paste, you should chuse a still place, and use a Quill-float, a small hook, a quick.



quick Eye, a nimble Rod and Hand. The same rule holds in regard to all tender baits.

N. B. The Spawn of any Fish, (Salmon especially,) beat to a paste, or boiled till so hard as to hang on the hook; or the flesh of any Fish beat to paste, or cut into small bits, is a choice bait for almost all Fish.

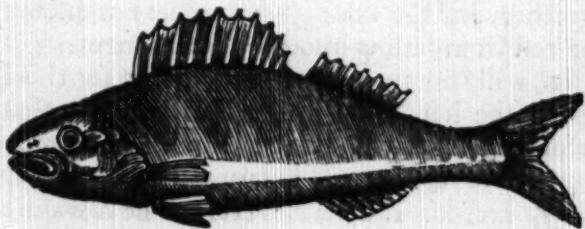
Take *Cocculus Indicus*, finely pounded, four ounces, mix it with Cummin, old Cheese, and Wheat-flour, about two ounces of each, work them into a paste with white wine, then divide it into pieces about the size of Pease, which throw into standing waters; all that taste will presently be stupified and swim to the top, so that you may catch them with your hands.

N. B. Some use Brandy instead of Wine, and put *Nux Vomica*, finely grated, into the composition.

Take Goats Blood, Barley Meal, and Lees of sweet white Wine, mix them with the Lungs of a Goat, boiled and pounded fine; make the whole into Pills, which throw into Ponds or Pits, and you may soon catch the Fish, who will prove intoxicated.

PATER-NOSTER-LINE. Six or eight very small Hooks tied along a Line, one half foot above each other.

## P E A R C H.



Called in *Cumberland*, *Barse*, is generally, when full grown, about twelve or fourteen inches long; sometimes,

sometimes, though but seldom, they attain to fifteen, which is an extraordinary size.

This Fish is Hog-backed and rather broad than otherwise. The colour inclines a little to a dusky yellow, with five or six blackish places like girdles proceeding from the back towards the belly.

The flesh of this Fish is firm and of an agreeable taste, of easy digestion, and very wholesome; but the liver is usually thrown away, because it is apt to be measly.

They spawn about once a year, and that is the latter end of *February*. Some think the Male is to be distinguished from the Female by the Fins being of a deeper red.

The most natural places for this Fish are rivers, and yet he will live and thrive well enough when shut up in a pond. In the day-time he does not seem to be fond of any particular Haunt, because he is almost continually roving about in quest of food, being a very voracious Fish: And yet they are more likely to be found under the hollow of a bank, the piles of Bridges, stumps of Trees, or in a gentle stream of a middling depth. In the Night, indeed, they retire to a place of repose, which if you are so lucky as to discover, early in the Morning, you have a fair chance to take them all, for they bite very boldly, and generally herd together, and the taking of one does not discourage the rest from falling into the same danger.

It will be to no purpose to angle for this Fish before the Mulberry-tree begins to bud, that is, before the Spring is so far advanced as to put the fruit out of danger of being killed by nipping frosts, and for the same reason he always bites best in warm weather; yet, in the very midst of Summer he is soonest taken in cool, cloudy, and windy weather, and you may angle for him any time

time of the day, but you will be more likely to succeed from Seven to ten in the Morning, and from Two till Sun-set in the Afternoon, or later.

In angling for Pearch you need not continue long in the same place, for they usually bite as soon as the bait drops in; you ought to angle at or near the bottom, constantly raising your bait almost to the top, letting it drop gently again. The Dock or Flag-worm is an excellent bait.

The most likely baits are Worms, Minnows, and small Frogs; but the most sure killing is the Brandling-worm, two upon the hook at a time, well scoured in Moss, unless it be in the *Mole*, and some other rivers that run into the *Thames*, where Minnows are scarce. But they are not very nice in the choice of their Food, and have even often been caught with a Fly in fishing for Trout; and sometimes a brace at a time have been caught in angling for Gudgeons with two hooks baited with Red-worms. They will take their own gills very well.

They take the bait best within a foot of the ground, and swallow it instantly, because they have the largest mouth, in proportion to their size, of any other Fish. However, when you fish with a Minnow or Frog, they should have a little more time when you strike, than when you bait with a worm.

The Pearch is a Fish that struggles hard for his life, and consequently yields the angler much diversion: When a Pearch is pursued by the Pike, he sets up his prickly fins, and often saves himself from being swallowed. If you find that you have a bite from a large one, give him a little time to gorge the bait; but if it is a small one you may strike instantly, especially if your bait be a Brandling.

He

He will bite at a Worm, a Minnow, or a little Frog; of which you may find many in Hay-time: Of Worms, the Lob-worm or the Brandling is taken to be the best, being well scoured in Moss or Fennel; and next the Worm that lies under a Cow-turd with a bluish tail. He will also take the Red-worm and the Dew-worm.

When the Pearch bites, be sure you give him time enough to pouch the hook, for there was scarce ever any angler that gave him too much. Some, in angling for Pearch, will suffer their bait to touch the ground, especially when they fish with a Worm. The turning of the water, or eddy, in a good Gravel-scour, is an excellent place for sport. Your tackle should be strong, because in fishing for Pearch, Pikes are often taken. Bait the ground over night with Lob-worms cut in pieces.

The following directions in Angling for Pearch with a Worm, may be worth observing: In *March* use the Red-worm at the bottom: In *April*, the Oak-worm, a young Frog with its feet cut off, or a Red-snail: In *May*, the Dock-worm, or the bait that breeds on the Osier-leaf, the Oak-leaf, and the Hawthorn: In *June*, the Red-worm with the Head cut off, and a Cod-bait put before it, or the Dor: In *July*, the large Grasshopper, or Dung-hill-grub: In *August*, and the following months, Red-worms, or Brandlings; at any time two or three Gentles.

He has been often fished for with two Hooks and a live Minnow with good success. The hooks have been tied to Silk, one of which is put through the upper jaw, and the other through the middle of the back.

When you bait with a Frog, thrust the hook through its Leg near the Thigh, and when you throw

throw it into the Water keep it from the shore as much as possible, for it will be for making thither unless prevented.

As the Pearch generally swallows the bait, and as it is difficult to get the hook out of his Entrails without breaking the line, it will be necessary to carry an instrument in your pocket which is called a Gorge. It may be made of Iron or Wood, about six inches long, and half an inch thick, with a hollow at the extremity. This hollow end you are to thrust down the throat of the Fish till you feel the hook, at the same time keeping your line strait, lest the hook should catch again; when you have disengaged it with this instrument, you may draw them both out carefully together.

PERRIWINKLES, taken out of the shell, are good baits for Roach in the River *Thames*, as are likewise Shrimps uncased for the Pike and Chub.

### PIKE, LUCE, or PICKEREL.



The Pike is a very voracious Fish, and often grows to an enormous size. In a Ditch near *Wallingford* two were caught, one of which, being the Milter, weighed fifty-one pound, and the Spawner, fifty-seven. The Ditch runs into the *Thames*, and they retired thither in order to spawn.

The make of a Pike is long, the head is flat, the back square, the Snout very prominent, almost like the bill of a Duck, and the lower jaw is longer than the upper. The mouth is very wide, and the tail forked. His body is covered with small



small thick scales, moistened on the edges with a kind of Mucus, which may be easily wiped off; to this Mucus is owing that greenish cast which we behold in this Fish, and the younger he is the greener he appears. If the back and sides are placed towards the light, there appears something of a golden hue. The sides are spotted with yellow, and the belly with white. On the tail there are dusky spots and reddish lines, especially towards the corners. The teeth in the lower jaw are crooked, in the upper there are none, but on the palate there is a trepel row. The tongue is broad, black, a little forked, and rough with teeth. The eyes are of a gold colour, and seem to be a little sunk into the head; and therefore the most commodious way of holding him is, by putting the fore-finger into one eye, and the thumb into the other. The head and gills are spotted with variety of small holes.

The liver is of a pale flesh-colour. The gall-bladder is joined to the upper part of the liver, and is emptied into the gut by a long duct; the gall itself is of a greenish yellow. The spleen is of a blackish colour, and almost triangular. The heart is of the same figure. The gut is covered with fat, and is folded back three times. The stomach is large, and wrinkled on the inside.

This Fish is of so voracious a nature, that he will swallow another Fish almost as big as himself. There are several stories related by *Gesner*, and others, concerning his ravenous disposition. Certain it is, they will not spare their own kind; and if the *Pearch* fares better than other fish, it is only on account of its prickly fins; for they will sometimes take them cross-wise in their mouths, and when it is dead, and its fins laid flat, they will swallow it head foremost.

Mr.

Mr. Lee of *Thelwell*, in *Chefbire*, had stored a Pit; but when he laded it, in expectation of catching a great number of Fish, to his disappointment he found only a large lean Pike, which had devoured all the Store-fish, and had in his stomach a Water-wagtail, and a young Throffle, which were supposed to have been hopping on a twig near the water.

A Pike caught in *Barn-Meer* (a large standing water in *Chefbire*,) was an Ell long, and weighed thirty-five pounds; it was presented to Lord *Cholmondeley*, who ordered it to be put into a Canal in the Garden, wherein were abundance of several sorts of Fish. About twelve months after his Lordship drew the Canal, and found that this overgrown Pike had devoured all the Fish, except one large Carp, that weighed between nine and ten pounds, and that was bitten in several Places. The Pike was then put into the Canal again, together with abundance of Fish with him to feed upon, all which he devoured in less than a year's time; and was observed by the Gardener and Workmen there to take the Ducks, and other water-fowl, under water; whereupon they shot Magpies and Crows, and threw them into the Canal, which the Pike took before their eyes: Of this they acquainted their Lord, who thereupon ordered the Slaughterman to sling in Calves Bel-lies, Chicken Guts, and such like Garbage, to him, to prey upon; but being soon after neglected, he died, as supposed, for want of food.

In the Stew for preserving Fish, at *John Eger-ton's*, Esq; at *Tatton*, in *Chefbire*, a large Pike was taken out, when there appeared in his mouth the tail of a Fish, which being pulled out, proved to be another Pike, weighing one pound, and then alive.

In

In 1730, whilst *Peter Bold*, of *Bold*, in *Lancashire*, was netting some Pits in *Burton Wood*, he saw a Pike lying amongst the Weeds. Mr. *Ralph Taylor*, a Gentleman who accompanied him, twice attempted to seize the Pike, but it escaped. Afterwards the Pit was drawn, and a Tench about five pounds weight pulled out; and so was this Pike, with the tail of another hanging out of its mouth, which being measured with the other proved nearly of equal size.

About the year 1740, when *Robert Hyde*, of *Casnal*, Esq; came of age, he had a large Company of Gentlemen to dine with him, to whom a Fisherman brought three Pike, one of twenty-three Pounds, another of twelve pounds, and a third of four pounds, which he had caught by trolling in the *Weaver*. That of twelve pounds appeared in many places to have been bit, which he thus accounted for. Whilst he was drawing the Fish to land it was laid hold of by a larger Pike, which stuck fast, and was landed, but then quitted his hold and got away.

1768, *William Cotton*, of *Stretton*, caught a Pike, weighing four pounds and a half, which had in its belly another Pike of three quarters of a pound.

Mr. *Walworth*, one of the Duke of *Bridgewater's* Agents, was passing *Trafford Moss*, near *Manchester*, with one of the Duke's Barges, he saw a Fish seemingly basking near the Banks; out he jumped, threw the Fish upon the grass; and, on examining, found it dead, and had been killed by a Viper, whose tail then hung out of its mouth. Mr. *Walworth* hailed a Man getting Broom; who said, he drove the Viper out of the Broom about an hour before.

PATIENCE is a necessary article, where a gentleman

tleman fishes without having read this book, or having got practical knowledge ; to prove which, I will give you some instances. A Clergyman, an acquaintance of the Publisher's, went, with a strong Easterly Wind, to the new River head, near *London*, and fished nine hours without a bite. The Bookseller advised him to read and learn, or next time to take with him *Caryll* on *Job*.

A Captain of a Man of War, who is a Man of sense, but has not yet learnt the Art of Fish-catching, went early in the Morning to Commodore *Hore's*, near *Warrington*. The Morning was frosty, but he bore it well, when called in to Breakfast ; at Noon there were no Fish ready for Table ; but, though the Wind was Easterly, he still had hopes. At Tea-time he was invited in. Hush ! Hush ! says the Captain, don't make a noise, I've just had two Nogs.

A Farmer at *Lynn* went to the Side of the *Mersey* to fetch his Cart Horses : He saw *Rabert Bankroft* fishing : He fetched a Load of Kenel Coal from Sir *Roger Bradshaw's* Pits (fifteen Miles) and when he came back, asked, what sport ? I'm just a going to have sport, says the Sportsman, for I've had three Nogs.

The Pike usually feeds on Fish or Frogs, and sometimes on a Weed of his own, called Pickerel-weed. It is a vulgar error, that Pikes are bred of this weed. They, who maintain it, assert, that where none have been put into Ponds, yet they have been there found in abundance ; and that there has always been plenty of that weed in such Ponds. But this, admit it to be true, is far from being a sufficient argument against an universal law of nature, which holds in Vegetables as well as Animals, that nothing can be produced

H

but

but by the seed of its own Species. Even the Flies in corrupted flesh are no otherwise the effect of that Corruption, than as it serves them for a proper nest and nourishment. And doubtless, by parity of Reason, there will be more Pikes found where there is a plenty of this their favourite weed, than in any other place, without the weed's contributing in the least to their original production.

The usual time of Spawning is in *March*, sometimes sooner, if the spring be forward. They retire into Ditches, as is supposed, that other fish may not devour their Spawn. They are prodigious Breeders; *Baltner* reckoned no less than a hundred and forty-eight thousand eggs of Spawn in one Row. They grow fast while young, for in the first Year only they grow to the length of sixteen inches, if the brook be clear in which they are spawned. When he comes to be thirty inches he is at a stand, and then thrives in thickness. It is a very uncommon sight to meet with one full four feet long.

They are in season all the Year, except in spawning-time, and about six weeks after it; therefore *February*, *March*, *April*, and *May*, are the worst months, but especially *March* and *April*, for in part of the other months, at least, they may be in pretty good order, especially the Male.

The flesh is white, firm, dry, and sweet, especially of a river Pike. Some think the larger they grow the more agreeable is their taste. But some think, when they weigh more than twelve pounds they have a sort of rankness, and under three they are flabby and insipid.

The Pike is fond of a quiet, shady, unfrequented water, and lurks in the midst of Weeds, Flags, or Bull-rushes: Yet he often makes Excursions from



from thence, and ranges about in search of prey: In winter and cold weather he lies deep, and near the bottom, but as the weather grows warm he frequents the shallows. In a very hot, clear, sultry day he may be seen lying on the surface of the water, but then you cannot tempt him with any bait.

His best biting time is early in the Morning and late in the Evening, when there is a brisk wind, and where the water is clear. If they bite at all they will take the bait at first; it is therefore needless to throw it often into the same place.

He will take any sort of bait, except a fly; but the principal are young Roach, Dace, Gudgeons, Minnows, Loaches, and Bleak. In *July*, young Frogs and Salmon-smelts are proper; and in winter the fat of Bacon. Your baits in general should be fresh, sweet, and clean, and if you expect to catch large ones, let not your baits be too small, otherwise you may spend a great deal of time to no purpose.

The best of the water-frogs for a Pike is the yellowest that you can get, for that the Pike will soonest take: And that your Frog may continue long alive, put your hook into its mouth (which you may easily do from the middle of *April* to *August*, when the Frog's mouth closes up, and continues so for at least six months,) and out at his gills, and then with a fine needle and silk fasten the upper part of his leg with only one stitch to the arming-wire of your hook, or tie it gently above the upper joint to the armed Wire, being careful to hurt him as little as possible.

There are several ways of fishing for a Pike, but the principal are Trowling, Trimmer-angling, and Snap-angling.

In Trowling, the line should be made of green silk, or thread, and should be forty yards long, or more, if the river be broad. Very great care should be taken that your line may run freely out ; for if it knots, or tangles, and by that means checks the motion of the Pike as he runs away with the bait, he will let it go, and will not be prevailed upon to take it again very soon, unless he be hungry indeed. When you have fixed your bait on your hook, with as little damage to it as possible, cast it up and down such places as you imagine the Pike frequents, letting it sink a considerable depth before you pull it up again. When the pike comes, you may sometimes perceive it by a motion in the water, or at least you may feel him, which is the same thing. When this happens, your business is to give him line enough, that he may have free scope to go where he pleases, without the least check, for the reasons above-mentioned. When he is got into his hold, there let him lie till you perceive the-line move, and then you may conclude he has pouched the bait ; then wind up your line till you think it is almost strait, and with a nimble jerk, contrary to the way the Pike takes, hook, and land him as soon as you can.

A Trimmer is made use of in the still part of a River, or in a Pond, Meer, or Canal. Your bait, which should be a young Roach, Dace, or Gudgeon, may hang about Mid-water, and may be left to itself while you are fishing elsewhere. By this artifice one person may do as much execution as if he had a companion along with him, with little or no additional trouble to himself. For further directions see Trowling under the Article ANGLING.

A Snap is generally two large hooks placed back

back to back, and a Perch hook in the middle to hang your bait upon. When you make use of it, take a Gudgeon, Dace, or small Roach, and fix it to the small hook, by running it under the back-fin; then let it swim down the Current, and when you perceive the float to be drawn under water, you may conclude the Pike has laid hold of it; therefore give it a smart jerk, and without giving him time to play, keep your line always straight, drawing him towards the shore as soon as you can without breaking your tackle, and then with your landing-net throw him out of the water. It will always be the most prudent method to have gimp or brass-wire next your hook, and your line to be rather shorter than the rod.

Note, That in Trowling, the head of the bait fish must be at the bent of the hook, and must come out at or near his tail. But the essential difference between these two methods is, that in the former, the Pike is always suffered to pouch or swallow the bait; but, in the latter, you are to strike as soon as he has taken it.

The common trowling-hook, for a living bait, consists of two large hooks, with one common shank, made of one piece of wire, of about three quarters of an inch long, placed back to back, so that the points may not stand in a right line, but incline so much inwards, as that they with the shank may form an angle, little less than equilateral. At the top of the shank is a loop, left in the bending the wire to make the hook double, through which is put a strong twisted brass-wire, of about six inches long; and to this is looped another such link, but both so loose, that the hook and the lower link may have room to play: to the end of the line fasten a steel swivel.

But there is a sort of Trowling-hook different from that already described, and to which it is thought preferable, which will require another management; this is no more than two single hooks tied back to back, with a strong piece of gimp between the shanks; in the whipping the hooks and the gimp together make a small loop, and take it into two links of chain of about an eighth of an inch diameter; and into the lower link, by means of a small staple of wire, fastened by the greater end of a bit of lead, of a conical figure, and somewhat sharp at the point. These hooks are to be had at the Fishing-tackle shops, ready fitted up.

This latter kind of hook is to be thus ordered, viz. Put the lead into the mouth of the bait-fish, and sew it up; the fish will live some time, and will swim with near the same ease as if at liberty. But if you trowl with a dead bait, as some do, let the shank be about six inches long, and leaded from the middle as low as the bent of the hook, to which a piece of very strong gimp must be fastened, by a Staple, and two links of chain; the shank must be barbed like a dart, and the lead a quarter of an inch square: The barb of the shank must stand like the fluke of an anchor, which is placed in a contrary direction to that of the stock. Let the gimp be about a foot long, and to the end thereof fix a swivel. To bait it, thrust the barb of the shank into the mouth of the bait-fish, and bring it out at his side, near the tail; when the barb is thus brought through, it cannot return, and the fish will lie perfectly straight; a circumstance that renders the trouble of tying the tail unnecessary.

There is yet another sort of Trowling-hook, which is, indeed, no other than what most writers  
on

on this subject have mentioned; whereas the others, here described, are late improvements; and this is a hook either single or double, with a long shank, leaded about three inches up the wire with a piece of lead about a quarter of an inch square, at the greater or lower end: Fix to the shank an armed wire about eight inches long; to bait this hook, thrust your wire into the mouth of the fish, quite through his belly, and out at his tail, placing the wire so as that the point of the hook may be even with the belly of the bait-fish; and then tie the tail of the fish with strong thread to the wire. Some fasten it with a needle and thread, which is a neat way.

Both with the Trowl, and at the Snap, cut away one of the fins of the bait-fish close at the gills, and another behind the vent on the contrary side; which will make it play the better.

The bait being thus fixed, is to be thrown in, and kept in constant motion in the water, sometimes suffered to sink, then gradually raised; now drawn with the stream, and then against it; so as to counterfeit the motion of a small fish in swimming. If a Pike is near, he mistakes the bait for a living fish, seizes it with prodigious greediness, goes off with it to his hold, and in about ten minutes pouches it. When he has thus swallowed the bait, you will see the line move, which is the signal for striking him; do this with two lusty jerks, and then play him.

Chuse to trowl in clear, and not in muddy water, and in windy weather, if the wind be not easterly.

Some use in Trowling and Snapping, two or more swivels to their line; by means whereof the twisting of the line is prevented, the bait plays more freely, and, though dead, is made to appear



as if alive ; which, in rivers, is doubtless an excellent way : But those who can like to fish in Ponds or still waters, will find very little occasion for more than one.

The Pike is also to be caught with a Minnow ; for which method take the following directions :

Get a single hook, slender, and long in the shank ; let it resemble the shape of a Shepherd's Crook ; put lead upon it, as thick near the bent as will go into the Minnow's mouth : Place the point of the hook directly up the face of the fish ; let the Rod be as long as you can handsomely manage, with a line of the same length, cast up and down, and manage it as when you trowl with any other bait : If, when the Pike hath taken your bait, he runs to the end of the line before he hath gorged it, do not strike, but hold still only, and he will return back, and swallow it : But if you use that bait with a trowl, it is preferable to all others.

When you have struck him, be sure to have your line ready and slack, that he may take as much liberty as he will : For when he finds himself trepanned with the hook, he will use all his might and cunning to get loose. As you feel him come easily towards you, you may be still drawing, till you feel him make resistance again : Then let him have his swing till his fury is over ; after which gather your line to you again till he starts away ; and if you can get him to the top, it will sooner tire him : For the more he strives and throws himself from you, the sooner will he be weary. After this manner, by drawing him up, and letting him loose again, you may tame him till you bring him to shore, and land him by the net. But in case you be unprovided with this convenience, beware of attempting to take him out by the back or tail, but grasp him by the head, and put your  
fingers

fingers into his eyes. If you lay hold by his gills, your fingers may be injured with his bites, which are venomous.

There are two other ways of taking Pikes, frequently practised, though not so much by the fair Angler as the two former : These are called snaring and hooking. In *May*, *June*, and *July*, in a clear, calm, hot, gleamy day, Pikes soar on the water's surface, or near it : Then fix a snare, or running-noose of wire, to the end of a strong packthread, a yard and a half long, and the other end of the packthread to a long pole that is manageable. Your snare being open, you may observe jacks lie on the top of the water, and easily put the noose over their head and gill fins, and with a quick and smart jerk hoist them to land.

Or you may, at that time, take a line of seven or eight feet, and arm to it a hook of the largest size, having the shank leaded neatly, that the weight may guide it at pleasure, and you may strike the Pike with the bare hook when they go a frogging into ditches, and you see them soaring on the superficies of the water. Or you may whip your hooks to such a line, the points a quarter of a circle distant from each other, and all whipt together.

PITT is a large, and generally square piece of standing water, confined in a place from whence Marl has been dug out ; they are very common in *Cheshire*, where the fields are often enriched with this sort of manure.

POUCH. A Term peculiar to Jack and Pike, when they swallow their prey.

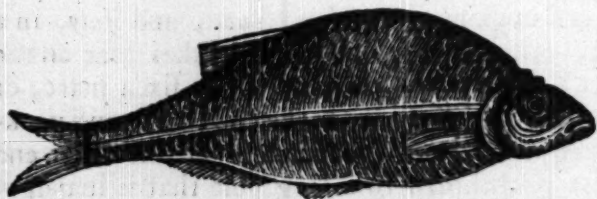
POUCH. A Bag, wherein the Angler carries some parts of his apparatus.

QUOIL. A Term used in Trowling, and signifies to gather up the line with the thumb

and the two next fingers, in small Rings of an equal size.

RAISE a Fish, is to bring him to the top after you have hooked him.

### RED-EYE.



The RED-EYE, by some called BREAM DACE, is very much like a Bream, but thicker. His back is very round, and high, in the manner of a Hog. The fins are all red; and the whole body has a reddish cast, especially the Iris of the Eye; from whence it derives its name. The scales are larger than those of a Roach; when it is scaled, the skin looks greenish. The palate is like that of a Carp.

This Fish differs from a Roach in its Shape, which resembles a Bream, as was mentioned before; besides, it has redder Eyes, and is of a more beautiful colour than a Chub. When full grown, they measure ten inches.

They spawn in May, among the roots of trees; and are angled for in the same manner as a Rud, Roach, or Dace.

Angle for him with two Gentles, or a well-scowered worm.

RED-WORMS or GILTALÉ, are found in fat rotten earth, or Dunghills, chiefly of cows or hogs dung; but the best in Tanners Bark.

RISE. A Fish is said to rise, when he endeavours to take a fly on the surface of the water.

ROACH.

R O A  
R O A C H.

155



It is a less fish than a Bream, and about one third as broad as it is long. The back is of a dusky colour, and sometimes blueish; but the belly pale. The Iris of the Eyes, as well as the tail and fins, are red; the lateral lines run parallel to the belly; and the tail is forked: About the gills it is of a gold colour; the mouth is round, but void of teeth; it being a leather-mouthed fish.

Angle as for Dare, with one Gentle.

They breed both in Rivers and Ponds; and though the Pond Roach are largest, those caught in Rivers are the best fish.

They spawn about the middle of *May*, and recover their strength in a month's time.

When you angle for Roach in a Pond, throw in a little chew'd white-Bread, and let your bait, (which ought to be one large Gentle) lie within six inches of the bottom, and you'll not only take much larger, but three to one to what you will by any other method.

In winter you may fish for him with Paste or Gentles; in *April* with Worms or Cod-bait; but in very hot weather with very little white Snails, Earth-bobs, New Cheese, or with Flies under water, for he seldom takes them at the top as the Dace will; and this is the principal thing wherein they differ.

A Gen.

A Gentleman took a Roach out of a Pond in *Cheshire*, which weighed four pounds within two ounces ; which being dressed in the manner of Carp, proved to excel that fish in taste.

In *August* the Roach Fishery affords much pleasure about *London*, where it is thus practised: Any Waterman will provide a boat, with rip-hooks, to fix it in the middle of the stream ; and prepare your ground-bait, which is of Bran and stale Bread, mixed in balls, and thrown in, up the stream, with Clay or small stones within, sufficient to sink it speedily, and lodge it at the bottom. Not more than three can conveniently fish in one Boat, which is usually hired at the rate of Three pence *per* hour. Your tackle must be strong, your float large, and heavy-leaded, to sink the quicker. The constant bait is a well scoured Gentle, three at least on your hook, which must swim ten or twelve inches, at most, from the bottom. The best times are, from half-ebb tide, to within two hours of high-water : And the best places are, the whole Sand-bank in the middle, facing the *Tower* ; that opposite the *Temple* ; before *Whitehall* ; and against *Chelsea* Church. At these places you will find plenty of sport. Some, with very good success, pick out some sand upon the shore, among the Chalk-stones at the banks of the *Isle of Dogs*, near *Limehouse*, under the Wind-mills, and fish there in the same manner, from Dead-ebb, till within an hour or more of High-water, retiring backwards as the Flood comes in. As the soil is oozy and slippery, care must be taken to chuse such a place as you may securely retreat as the tide advances.

There is also another highly approved method of this diversion below-bridge, called *Stern-fishing*, by fastening a Boat at the Stern of any Collier,



lier, or Vessel that has lately been a voyage, and has her bottom foul, which contains Insects and food for the Fish; use about two joints of your Rod at most, and a Line not longer than four feet, your Float fixed within twelve inches of the top of it. Angle there with three or four Gentles on your Hook at a time, and lay in as close to the Ship's Stern as you can, letting it swim about three yards. In this you use no ground-bait. You must begin when the Tide first ebbs, and for two hours, at least, you will not fail of catching many fish, (Roach and Dace) and those very large ones.

In *Thames* Angling, you must beware that you make not your attempt when there is a cold and raw air, high wind, rough water, or wet weather, or when there are Spring Tides, or the Land Floods come down. At the Chalk-hill, and about the Piles of *London-Bridge*, there is excellent sport when the Tide is low. Be always careful to pitch your Boat on that side the river that is most under the wind.

ROCK-FISHING is to be followed only during the Summer Season, and is chiefly practised in the South and South-west parts of *England*, and in some places in *Ireland*. In this last mentioned Country, the Rocks of *Dunlery*, which are eight or ten Miles in length, and the nearest part about five Miles eastward of *Dublin*, are remarkable for this way of fishing.

When you fish for Haddocks, your Line must be deep in the water, and your Hook baited with two or three Lob-worms: Your tackle must be strong; for they struggle hard, especially if they have arrived to a tolerable growth.

As to the other part of Sea-fishing, namely, in a Ship under Sail, your Line ought to be sixty Fathom

Fathom in length, having a large Hook affixed to it, and a piece of Lead sufficient to keep it as deep under water as possible. Your Line must be made of Hemp, and fastened to the Gunwale of the Ship.

Cod, Mackerel, and large Haddock, are the fish usually taken in this way, and sometimes ling: The bait for them, except for the Mackerel, is a piece of raw Beef, and it is scarce possible to feel either of them bite, even though you hold the Line in your hand, by reason of the continual motion of the Ship.

It is in vain to fish for Mackerel, except when the Ship lies by, or is becalmed. A piece of scarlet Cloth hung upon a Hook, is the first bait that is used, which never fails of answering the intent it was designed for. And when you have taken a Mackerel, cut a thin piece off from the Tail, a little above the Fin, and place it upon your hook, and you need not fear taking many of them. Thus one or two will serve for Baits, till you are tired of the sport. One Mackerel, if dressed as soon as it is taken, will be preferable to a dozen that are brought to shore.

They who divert themselves with catching Crabs, should bait their Hooks with Chickens-guts, or with the Guts of Fish; and when they bring a Crab near the surface of the water, have their Landing-net ready, or weigh him on shore with all the expedition imaginable.

For further particulars see WHITING and WHITING POLLACK, in the second Alphabet.

RODS. If you fish with more than one hair, or with a Silk-worm gut, red Deal is much the best, with a Hickery Top, and about four yards long the whole Rod; for small Fly, with single Hair,

hair about three yards, very slender, the top of the yellowish Hickery, with Walebone about nine inches, and very near as long as the Stock; the Stock of white Deal, not too rush grown; let it be thick at the bottom, which will prevent it from being top heavy, and make it light in the hand.

A Rod for Salmon, or large Chub, the stock of red Deal or Ash, about ten feet, the top about seven, proportioned as above; the top of the best Cane or yellow Hickery, but not too slender; get it well looped, and use a wheel.

The time to provide joints for your Rods is near the winter Solstice, if possible between the Middle of *November* and *Christmas-Day*, or at farthest between the end of *October* and the beginning of *January*, the sap continuing to descend till towards *November*, and beginning to rise again when *January* is over. The stocks or buts should be of ground Hazle, ground Ash, or ground Willow; though very good ones are sometimes made of Juniper, Bay tree, or Elder-shoots, Stocks ought not to be above two or three feet in length, and every joint beyond it should grow gradually taper to the end of the top. Chuse the wood that shoots directly from the ground, and not from any stump, because these latter are never so exactly shaped.

Hazle-tops are preferred to all others; and the next to them are Yew, Crab-tree, or Black-thorn. Some indeed use the Bambou Cane, and say it exceeds the best Hazle. But as the Hazle is freest from Knots, and of the finest natural shape, it seems fittest for the purpose. If they are a little warped, you may bring them strait at a fire; and if they have any knots or excrescences, you must take

take them off with a sharp knife : though, if possible, avoid gathering such as have either of those defects.

For the ground angle, especially in muddy waters, the Cane or reed is preferred for a stock. It should be three yards and a half long, with a top of Hazle, consisting of one, two, or three pieces, all of them together two yards, or one yard and a half long at least, including the Whalebone. Your rod will then be in all five yards and a half, or five yards long at least. The stiffness of the Cane is helped by the length and Strength of the top, the pliant and regular bending of which preserves the line.

Having got a Hazle-top, made of your desired length, cut off five or six inches of the small end : then piece neatly to the remaining part, a small piece of round, smooth, and taper Whalebone, of five or six inches long, and whip it to the Hazle with strong silk, well rubbed with the best Shoemaker's wax. At the top of the Whalebone, whip a narrow but strong noose of hair, with waxed silk, to put your line to.

The best method to piece Hazle and Bone, is, first whip the end of the Hazle with thread, and bore it with a square piece of iron of a suitable size, and then make the thick end of the bone to go into it, after it has been dipped in Pitch ; then scrape off, file the Hazle and whip it neatly.

But the neatest Rod is thus made : get a white Deal, or Fir-board, thick, free from knots and frets, and seven or eight feet long : let a dextrous Joiner divide this with a Saw into several breadths : then, with his planes, let him shoot them round, smooth, and rush-grown, or taper. • One of these will be seven or eight Feet of the  
bottom

bottom of the Rod, all in one piece : fasten to it an Hazle of six or seven feet long, proportioned to the Fir, and also Rush-grown. This Hazle may consist of two or three Pieces ; to the top of which fix a piece of Yew, about two feet long made round, taper, and smooth ; and to the Yew a piece of small round, and smooth Whalebone, five or six inches long. This will be a curious rod, if artificially worked : but be sure that the Deal for the bottom be strong and round.

The Rod for fly, and running Worm, in a clear water, must by no means be top heavy ; but very well mounted, and exactly proportionable, as well as slender and gentle at top : otherwise it will neither cast well, strike readily, nor ply and bendequally, which will very much endanger the Line. Let both the Hazle and Yew tops be free and clear from knots, they will otherwise be often in danger to break.

As the whiteness of the Fir will scare away Fish, you must colour your stock in this manner : warm the Fir at the fire, when finished by the Joiner ; and then, with a feather dipped in *Aqua Fortis*, stroke it over and chase it into the wood, which it will make of a pure cinnamon colour.

It is found very useful to have rings or eyes, made of fine wire, and placed upon your rod from one end to the other, in such a manner as that when you lay your eye to one, you may see through all the rest. Through these rings your line must run, which will be kept in a due posture by that means : and you must have a winch or wheel affixed to your Rod, about a foot above the end, by which you may, if it should be proper, give liberty to the Fish.

Rods for Roach, Dace, Tench, Chub, Bream, and Carp, should not have the top so gentle as those



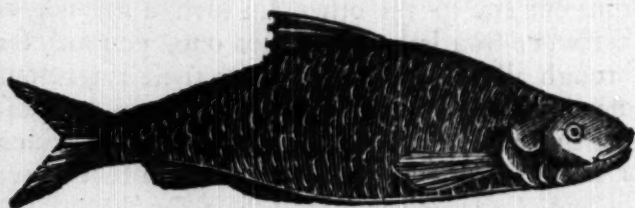
those for Fly, but pretty stiff, that so the Rod may exactly answer the motion of the hand : For Roach and Dace only nibble, and if you strike not in that very moment, especially if you fish with paste, or any very tender paste, you miss them, and a slender top folds and bends with a sudden jerk.

In a time of draught, steep your Rod in water a little before you begin to angle. Fasten to the top of your Rod, or Fin, with Shoemaker's wax and silk, a noose or loop of hair, not large, but strong and very straight, to fix your Line to.

Your top for the Running Line must be always gentle, that the Fish may the more insensibly run away with the Bait, and not be scared with the stiffness of the Tackle.

To preserve Hazles, whether Stocks or Tops, from being worm-eaten, or rotten, twice or thrice in a year, as you think fit, rub them all over with Sallad-Oil, Tallow, or sweet Butter, chafing it in with your hand : But, above all, keep them dry, to prevent their rotting, and not too near the Fire, lest they grow brittle : And in the Spring, before you begin to angle, steep them at least twelve hours in water.

### R U D, or F I N S C A L E.



The RUD or BROAD ROACH, is broader than a Carp, and thicker than a Bream, and usually from twelve to fourteen inches long. This Fish seems

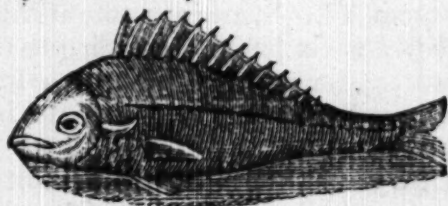
seems to partake of the nature not only of the Carp, but of the Bream and Roach. Its colour is a dusky yellow, and its scales are as large as those of Carp.

It is found in the *Rhine*, in the Lakes of *Hol-derness* in *Yorkshire*, in those not far from *Lincoln*, the *Yare* in *Norfolk*, and in the river *Cherwell* in *Oxfordshire*.

It is a Fish in great esteem, and is placed among those of the first rank. It is always in season, and consequently fit to eat. The time of spawning is in *April*, and then it is at the worst; the signs of which are white spots about the head of the Males. At this time likewise they feel more rough, and swim in shoals, casting their Spawn among the weeds that grow in the water. The largest weigh about two pounds.

They bite very freely, struggle hard for their lives, and yield the Angler good diversion. They feed near the top of the water, and the principal baits for them are Red worms and Flies.

R U F F, or P O P E.



This fish is called by some *ASPEDO*, from the roughness of its body, and by others *PERCA FLUVIATILIS MINOR*, from its likeness to a Pearch. When largest, it seldom exceeds six inches, and is covered with rough prickly scales. The Fins are prickly also, which, like a Pearch, he bristles up stiff when he is angry.

The

The time of spawning is in *April*. The flesh is second to none for the delicacy of its taste.

It is found in most of the large rivers in *England*, particularly the *Yare* in *Norfolk*, the *Cam* in *Cambridgeshire*, the *Isis* near *Oxford*, the *Sow* near *Stafford*, the *Tame* that runs into the *Trent*, the *Mole* in *Surry*, &c. The most likely place to meet with him, is in the sandy and gravelly parts of these rivers, where the water is deep, and glides gently along. And if you meet with one, you may conclude there are more, for they generally herd together in shoals.

He will take almost any bait, and bites at the same time as the *Perch*. However, a red-worm, or small *Brandling*, is to be preferred, finding it to be a bait they generally covet: yet some have taken them with a *Minnow* almost as big as themselves, when they have been angling for *Trout*.

The best way, before you begin, will be to bait the ground with two or three handfuls of earth, and then you will be sure of diversion if there are any *Ruffs* in the hole, and will stand a fair chance to take them all. Sometimes use a *Pater-noster* line with five or six hooks, according to the depth of the water; for when it has been a little troubled, they will take the bait from the top of the stream to the bottom.

**RULES for FISHING.** In all sorts of angling, be sure to keep out of the fishes sight, and as far off the river's bank as possible, unless you angle in a muddy water, and then you may approach nearer.

Angle always if you can on the lee Shore; and observe, that fish lie or swim nearer the bottom, and in deeper water, in winter than in Summer. They also get near the bottom in  
any

any cold day, and on the calm side of the water : and in the winter they are caught best in the mid time of the day, and in Sun-shiny Weather.

When you angle for Perch, Chub, Tench, Carp, Dace, Bream, Gudgeon, and Ruff, and have hooked one, who after makes his escape, you will not often have any great sport at that standing for one or two hours after such misfortune, (except you cast some ground-bait into the water immediately, which may preserve your sport,) because the fish is so frightened, that he chases his companions out of that place. Therefore, after some trial, it is best to remove, and angle at some other standing.

Cast into such places where you use to angle, once a week at least, all sorts of corn boiled soft, Ale-grains, or Wheat-bran steeped in Blood, Blood dried and cut to pieces, Snails, Worms chopped into pieces, pieces of Fowl or Beasts Guts, Guts of Fowl, Beasts livers cut into pieces, Oatcake or Cheese chewed, ground Malt, &c. When you angle for Carp, Tench, Chub, Roach, Dace, Barbel, and Bream, you cannot feed too often or too much. This course draws the Fish to the place you desire, and there keeps them together.

In a clear water, when you use worms, bait with but one worm only. In a muddy or discoloured water, bait with two Worms at a time. As in clear water, the colour of your line must be a duskyish white, or grey colour, ; so in water that is discoloured, your line for two yards next the hook ought to be of a sorrel, brown, or chesnut, and the upper part of it white.

When you angle in a very stony river that is clear, with the running-line, the stones are apt  
to

to rub the pellets bright, which scares away the fish: when it does so, remove the bright lead, and put on another that is black.

Let your apparel not be of a light or shining colour, which will reflect upon the water, and fright away the fish, but let it be of a dark brown colour, and sit close to the body. Fish are terrified with any the least sight of motion: therefore, by all means keep out of sight, when you angle in a clear water, either by sheltering behind some bush or tree, or by standing as far off the river's side as you can possibly. To effect this the better, a long rod at ground, and a long rod and line at artificial fly, are absolutely necessary. Neither ought you to move much on the banks, next the Water you angle in, especially for Trouts, Chubs, or Carps.

When you angle at ground in a clear water, or dibble with natural flies, angle up the river; but in muddy water, or with Dub-fly, angle down the river.

When you have hooked a large fish, let him play and tire himself within the water; and have special care to keep the rod bent, lest he run to the end of the line, and break either hook or hold. Haul him not too near the top of the water, lest by flouncing he break your line.

Where any weeds, roots of trees, stones, Wood, or other Rubbish are, it is often good, but troublesome angling: for to such places Fish resort for warmth and security. The same may be said of Whirl-pools, which are like pits in Rivers, and seldom unfurnished of good fish. Likewise at Weirs, Weir-pools, Mill-streams, Piles, Posts, and pillars of Bridges, Flood-gates, Cataracts, and falls of waters. The conflux of rivers, the eddies betwixt two streams, the re-  
turns



turns of a stream and the sides of a stream, are good places generally to angle in.

If you angle at any place you have twice or thrice baited, and find no sport, if no one has been there before you, or no grand impediment in the season or water appear, you may be assured that either Pike or Pearch, if they breed in that river, have taken up their quarters there, and scared all the other fish from thence, for fear of becoming their prey. Your only remedy is presently to angle for them, with suitable tackle and baits; and when they are caught, the others will repose themselves of their former station.

Keep the Sun, or the Moon, if you angle at night, before you, provided your eyes can endure it: at least, be sure to have those Planets on your side; for if they are on your back, both yourself and rod will by the shadow, give offence, and every creature sees farther and clearer when it looks towards the light, than the contrary.

Let all Baits and Flies whatsoever fall gently first into the water, before any other part of the line, with as little of the line as possible, and without any disturbance, plunging or circling of the water, which mightily scares and frightens fish,

**RULES and CAUTIONS.** Never raise a large fish out of the water by taking the hair to which your hook is fastened, or indeed any part of the line into your hand; but either put a Landing-net under him, or, for want of that, your hat: you may, indeed, in fly-fishing, lay hold of your line to draw a fish to you; but this must be done with caution.

Your silk for whipping hooks and other fine work, must be very small; and wax it, and indeed any

any other kind of binding with Shoemakers wax, which, of all wax, is the toughest and holds best.

Inclose the knots and joints of your lines in a small pill of wax, pressed very close, and the superfluities pinched off: this will soon harden, and prevent the Knots from drawing. It is better to whip your knots with fine silk.

If for strong fishing you use grass, which, when you can get it fine, is to be preferred to Gut; remember always to soak it about an hour in water before you use it: this will make it tough, and prevent its breaking.

Whenever you begin fishing, wet the ends of the joints of your rod; which, as it makes them swell, will prevent their loosening. And if you happen with rain, or otherwise to wet your rod, so that you cannot pull the joints asunder, turn the ferrel a few times round in the flame of a candle, and they will easily separate.

Before you fix the loop of Bristle to your hook, in order to make a Fly, to prevent its drawing, be sure to singe the ends of it in the flame of a Candle; do the same by the hair, to which at any time you whip a hook.

Make Flies in warm weather only; for in cold your waxed silk will not draw. Moderate weather is best.

Never fish in any water that is not common, without leave of the owner, which is seldom denied to any but those that do not deserve it.

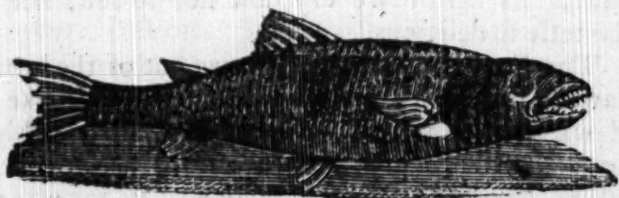
If at any time you happen to be overheated with walking, or other exercise, avoid small liquors, especially water, as you would Poison; and rather take a glass of Brandy; the instantaneous effects whereof, in cooling the Body and quenching drought, are amazing.

Remember that the wit and invention of Mankind

kind were bestowed for other purposes than to deceive silly fish; and that however delightful Angling may be, it ceases to be innocent when used otherwise than as a mere recreation.

**RUNNERS.** Bits of Quills to fasten your line to your float. Also a fine sort of an Eel, by some called the Silver-Eel.

## S A L M O N.



A SALMON may be called the King of fresh water fish, and has different names, according to its different ages: Those that are taken in the river *Mersey* in *Cheshire* the first year are called SMELTS, in the second SPRODS, the third MORTS, the fourth FORK-TAILS, the fifth HALF-FISH, and in the sixth, when they have attained their proper growth, they are thought worthy of the name of SALMONS. The Smelts, or Fry, leave the *Mersey* about *May* or *June*, and are then about two Ounces a-piece; and return about *August* or *September*, and are from one-half to two pounds.

Their greatest magnitude is much the same in most parts of *Europe*, and when they are largest, they weigh from thirty-six to fifty-four pounds; one of this last weight being caught at *Latchford Causey*, in the year 1763.

The Salmon is a beautiful fish, and has so many excellent properties, that it is every where in high esteem. It has a longish Body covered with small thin Scales, a small Head, a sharp  
I Snout

Snout, and a forked Tail. The colour on the back is blueish, on other parts white, generally intermixed with blackish or reddish spots in a very agreeable manner. The Female is distinguished from the Male by a longer and more hooked Nose, its Scales are not so bright, and its Body is speckled over with dark-brown spots: When the spawn begins to grow large its Belly is flatter, its flesh more dry and not so red, nor is the taste so delicious.

The Excrescence which grows out of the lower Jaw of the Male, which is a boney gristle like a Hawk's Beak, is not a sign of his being sickly, but is a defence provided by nature against such fish as would devour the Spawn. It grows to the length of about two Inches, and falls off when he returns to the Sea.

Its Teeth are but small in proportion to the Body; its Gills are quadruple, with a broad cover full of red spots, in the same manner as the sides, for towards the back they are dusky.

The flesh is red, if in season; it is sweet, tender, flakey, and luscious, for which reason it satisfies the sooner: Though the taste of it is generally preferred to that of all other fish, yet it sooner offends the Stomach by its viscosity, and consequently is apter to create a Nausea, and cause a surfeit. It ought to be kept a few days before it be dressed, for which reason it is better when it reaches *London*, than when caught in the *Mersey*. About the time of spawning, it grows more insipid, and loses its lively colour. Some begin to be out of season soon after the Summer Solstice, and others soon after, which may be known by their falling away, their losing their beautiful spots, and by their colour; insomuch that when they are quite out of season, they look like

like a fish of a different species, and are then called Kippers.

The Salmon chuses the river for his abode about six months in the year; they enter the fresh water about *December* or *January*, and are sometimes caught in the *Mersey*, in *November*, *February*, or *March*, where they continue till the Autumnal Season, (here they are very humanely protected by the power of the *Cheshire* and *Lancashire* Justices. It were to be wished that as much might be said to the credit of the *Chester* Justices, who have permitted the idle wretches of that City to run from Harveſt-labour, and to ſubſiſt by deſtroying the Female Salmon, then full of Spawn and too heavy to eſcape the Nets) at which time they caſt their Spawn, and ſoon after return to the Sea. But directly the contrary of this is reported of the river *Ex* in *Devonſhire*, and the river *Wye* and *Uſk* in *Monmouthſhire*, where the Salmon are ſaid to be in ſeaſon during the other ſix months.

When Spawning-time comes, the Female ſeeks a proper place, in a gravelly bottom, where ſhe has been obſerved to work with her Head, Tail, Belly, and Sides, till ſhe has formed a kind of *Nidus*, of the ſame dimensions with herſelf, which done, ſhe diſcharges her Spawn, and retires; then the Male, or Milter, advances, and covers the Spawn with his Belly, emitting at the ſame time a whitish Fluid, like Milk (which prevents the Spawn from waſhing down the Stream): This is no ſooner over, but the Female returns to the Male, when they uſe their joint endeavours to cover their Brood with the Gravel, in which they work with their Noſes like Hogs: After this they return to the Deeps to recover their ſtrength, which they do in about twenty days.



About this time this fish is of small value; but to prevent their being destroyed, the laws of the land inflict a penalty on whomsoever shall destroy Salmon between the 11th of *August* and 22d of *November*; but it would be better for the Community, if it was the 11th of *September* and the 22d of *December*.

There is nothing relating to this fish, which has been more talked of, than its agility in leaping over the Obstacles which oppose its passage either to or from the Sea; for they are frequently seen to throw themselves up Cataracts and Precipices many yards high. They sometimes make several essays before they can gain their point, and when they have done it, it has been often to their own destruction, for they have leapt into Baskets placed on purpose to catch them.

There is a remarkable Cataract on the river *Tivy* in *Pembrokeshire*, where people often stand wondering at the strength and sleight which they use to get out of the Sea into the River; on which account it is known in those parts by the name of *the Salmon-Leap*. On the river *Wear*, near the city of *Durham*, there is another of this kind, which is accounted the best in *England*: Likewise at *Old Aberdeen* in *Scotland*, there is another, where such great plenty of Salmon has been caught, that they have been accounted the chief trade of the place.

Whenever their passage to the Sea is intercepted by Weirs, or any other contrivance, they soon grow sickly, lean, and languid; and if they are caught in that condition, when they come to the table, they prove tasteless and insipid: In the second year they pine away and die.

It

It is worth observation, that the Salmon is not only desirous of returning back to the rivers, but to that very river where it was spawned, as is evident by an experiment made by Fishermen, and others, who have caught them when very small, and have run a small Ribband, Tape, or Thread, through the Tail-fin: By this mark they have been certain that they have retaken the same fish, at the same place, as they returned from the Sea: By this means they have likewise discovered, that the Salmon is of very quick growth, and much more so than any other fish.

The chief rivers in *England* that yield this excellent fish are the *Thames, Severn, Mersey, Trent, Medway, Dee, Ex, Usk, Wye, Lon, Tyne, Werkington, Weaver, &c.* However, our *London* markets are supplied soonest from the North, where they are not only more plentiful, but are in season before those in the southern rivers.

The *Mersey* greatly abounds with Salmon, which in the spring strive to get up that Arm of the Sea, and with difficulty evade the Nets, which the Fishermen spread to catch them before they get to *Warrington-Bridge*, at which place the river becoming more narrow, and the Land-Owners having an exclusive right, each proprietor, by his Agents, catches Salmon, which, in the whole, amounts to above one thousand pounds a year; by which means the towns of *Warrington, Manchester, and Stockport*, are well supplied, and the overplus sent to *London*, by the Stage-coaches; or carried on horseback to *Birmingham*, and other inland towns.

Thus having given a general account of the nature of this noble fish, we shall now proceed to the method of taking him with the angle.

But first it must be noted, that the Salmon does not lie long in a place, but seems desirous of getting still nearer to the head of the spring. He does not lie near the bank-side, nor under the roots of trees, but swims in the deep and broad parts of the water, generally in the middle, and near the ground. But the Salmon-Smelts commonly lie in the rough and upper part of a gentle stream, and usually pretty near the middle in the months of *April* and *May*, and nearer the side earlier in the spring.

The most alluring bait for the Salmon, in the Western Islands of *Scotland*, is a raw Cockle taken out of the Shell; with this they fish at the bottom, using a running bullet. This method is practised in the river *Medway* in *Kent*, with success: Let the Cockle fall into a shallow, from which there was a gradual descent, into a deep hole. In most of the Salmon rivers of *France*, they use Prawns or Muscles, taken out of the shell.

In the months of *October*, they go up the smaller rivers as far as they can, to spawn. At that season of the year many Salmon get high up the river *Mersey*, where some few are caught by angling: but the far greatest part of them is destroyed by poaching fellows, with spears, though the fish are at that time of little or no value. Thus most harm is done to the breed of Salmon, and it were to be wished, that the Justices of the Peace would a little more exert themselves, and imprison these idle poachers.

The most usual baits are Lob-worms, small Dace, Gudgeons, Bleaks, Minnows, or two well-scoured Dew-worms, which should be often varied, in order to suit the humour of this fickle fish, for what he likes one day he will despise the next.

Though

Though it must be owned it is a very disagreeable circumstance to an Angler, and which he often meets with to exercise his patience, to see the fish sporting on the surface of the water, and not be able to tempt him with any of his baits. However he generally bites best about three in the afternoon, in *May, June, and July*, especially if the water happens to be clear, and there is a little breeze of wind stirring; but there will be still greater likelihood of success if the wind and stream set contrary ways.

There is a fly called the Horse-leech-fly, which he is very fond of; they are of various colours, have great Heads, large Bodies, very long Tails; and two, some have three pair of wings, placed behind each other: Behind each pair of wings whip the Body about with gold or silver twift, or both, and do the same by the Head: with this Fly-fish at length, as for Trout, and Grayling: But if you dib, do it with two or three Butterflies, of different colours, or with some of the most glaring small flies you can find.

When you make use of the fly, let your hook be strong and large; but it would be better to have two well-scoured Lob-worms, as they have been found most successful in fishing at the bottom. In this case, let your hook be large, and armed with Gimp; for though a Salmon, when struck, seldom or never attempts to bite the Line, yet, as you will be obliged to play the fish for some time, the line must rake against his Teeth, and you will be in great danger of losing your prize without this precaution. Next to Gimp are recommended the bristles of a *Westphalia* Hog doubled; which yet are only preferable to ours on account of the length. If, therefore, you cannot easily procure the former, you may make use of our own, which

being often lapp'd into the length of half a yard, have been found proof against the Teeth of a Jack, when trowling for that fish.

Whenever you observe a Salmon leap out of the water, you may safely conclude there is a deep hole not far off; and if the river is too broad for you to throw a fly, or if a contrary wind hinders you, then lay your Ledger-bait as near the hole as you can, and you will have great probability of success, for he always chuses such places for retirement. If you bait with a Dace, Gudgeon, &c. then put on your Swivel and Reel, and make use of a large Cork-float, with your Live-bait about Mid-water.

For the Salmon-fry, or Scegger, called in *Cheshire*, a Salmon-smelt, the properest baits are Ant-flies, Brandlings, Earth-bobs, Gentles, black and dun Gnats, all coloured small Hackles, and dub'd flies, according to the season; when they rise at fly, and a little before they leave the river, they usually get together in large shoals, where you will see ten or a dozen rise at a time; if you light of a shoal, you will never fail to have sport, as they rise very freely. You may use three or four hooks to one line, tied to single hairs. They are also frequently caught with the Red-worm in fishing for Gudgeons. The places where they are generally found are the Scours near the deeps, or amongst wood or weeds. They always leave the *Mersey* in *May* or *June*. Two of them were, whilst small, put by a Tradesman of *Stockport* into his Fish Pond, and again took out in three years, and proved to weigh five pounds.

The chief Salmon fisheries in *Europe* are along the coasts of *England*, *Scotland*, and *Ireland*; the fishing usually begins about the 1st of *January*,  
and



and ends the 11th of *August*. It is performed with nets in the places where the rivers empty themselves into the sea, and along the Sea-coasts thereabout; because these fish are seen to crowd thither from all parts in search of fresh water. They also fish for them higher up in the rivers, sometimes with Nets, and sometimes with Locks or Weirs made for that purpose, with Iron-gates: These Gates are so contrived, that the fish in passing up the river can open them with their heads, but they are no sooner entered than the Gates clap to, and prevent their return. Thus the Salmon are inclosed as in a Reservoir, where it is easy to take them.

Near *Flixon* in *Lancashire*, they fish for Salmon in the Night-time, by the light of Torches, or kindled Straw, which the fish mistaking for the Day-light, make towards, and are struck with the Spear, or taken with the Net, which they lift up with a sudden jerk from the bottom, having laid it in the evening before opposite the place where the fire is kindled. In some parts of *Scotland*, it is said they ride a fishing up the rivers, and when they espy them in the shallows, they shoot them with Fire-arms. It is very common to dart Salmon as they are endeavouring to get over the Weirs.

When the fish are caught, they open them, take out the Guts and Gills, and salt them in large Tubs made for that purpose, out of which they are taken before *October*, and are packed up in Casks from 300 to 450 pounds weight.

SALMON-SPAWN, a very good bait for Chub, and in some rivers for Trouts. The common way of using it, is, to take the Spawn, and boil it so hard as to stick on the hook, though some use it without boiling it at all. Others put a

good quantity of salt to their Spawn, and hang it in a linen bag, in the kitchen, far from the fire, where it will become hard; and then they steep it the night before it is used in some spirituous liquor. It is a lovely bait for the Winter and Spring, especially if used where Salmons use to spawn; for thither the fish are come in expectation of it.

SAMLET, FINGERIN, or PINK  
TROUT,



Never exceeds six or seven Inches in length, and has Teeth not only in the Jaws but the Palate and Tongue. The Body is covered with small Scales like a Trout. The back is full of black spots, and on the sides there are five or six impressions of such a form as though they had been made with Fingers; the Finger marks are cross-ways of the fish; hence some give them the title of *Fingerins*; in every one of these pits there is generally a red spot. Their bellies are white, and their Tail is forked like a Salmon. They spawn in *February*, and never leave the fresh water. They delight in the most swift and rapid streams, where no other fish is able to abide.

You may angle for them at any time of the year; early in the spring the best baits are Brandlings, Gilt-tails, Earth-hobs, and Gentles; from the middle of *March* till the middle of *October* with the black, dun, brown, grey, and green Gnat.

They will frequently take small Fly and Gentle in a rapid stream, full as well under water as at  
top

top. When you have got hold of one, get him out as soon as possible, for they as well as Salmon-fry, are so lively that they frequently get off the hook.

They may also be angled for in the same manner as the Salmon-Scegger. See SALMON.

In the Spring they bite best in sharp streams, where there is plenty of Gravel, or Wood, and very near the sides of the river; in the summer, after a very hot day, they always make in the evening to very shallow scours, or the sides of large Sand-banks, where, with as small a fly as can be made, and pointed with a very small Gentle, you may have excellent sport; use about two yards of single hair at the bottom of your line, and if you fish at ground, give him time, and you will be sure to take him; when you dress them, take the Guts out at the Gills, and do not open them. They are a very good fish, and always in season.

## S C H E L L E Y.



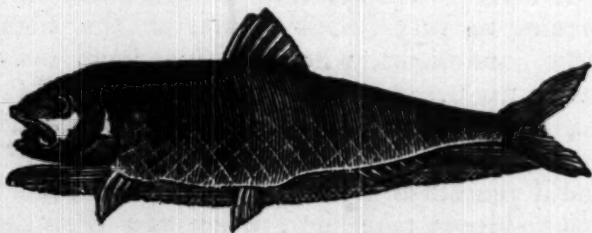
The SCHELLEY is bred in a lake in Cumberland, called *Hulfe-water*, or *Ulles-water*. The size of this fish is not very large, for it seldom or never exceeds two pounds in weight. In shape it is more like a Herring than a Trout, and seems to be a species partaking of the nature of both. The flesh is white, tender, not viscid, of good juice, and moderately nourishing.

They swim in shoals, and are caught with Nets in the months of *March* and *April*. As soon as they

they are taken out of the water they die, like a Herring. They are taken in the Lake *Acrorius* among the *Alps* in great quantities, and after they are salted they are sent to *Basil*, and other neighbouring towns.

**SCOUR.** To cleanse Worms, &c. from filth. Also a gravelly bottom, over which the water is a little rough and shallow.

## S H A D.



The **SHAD** is in shape much like a Herring, but a little broader: It grows to the length of a Foot and a half, and is much of the same colour of a Pilchard; that is, of a blueish black on the back, and the belly and sides of a silver colour.

The Shad enters the *Severn* in *March* or *April*, at which time they are fat and full of Spawn; but in *May* they return back to the Sea, very lean, and prodigiously altered; in some rivers, as the *Thames*, they stay till *June* or *July*.

The flesh is well enough tasted, but is so full of small Bones that it is little valued for that reason; though the *Severn* Shad are much better than those caught in the *Thames*.

The usual and only way of taking this fish is with Nets.

**SHANK.** That part of the hook, to which the line is whipt.

**SHEEP'S-BLOOD** is a good bait for a Chub, Roach, and Dace, when managed thus: You must dry

dry it in the Air upon a board or trencher, till it becomes pretty hard ; then cut into small pieces, proportioned to the size of the hook. Some add a little salt to it, which keeps it from growing black.

**SHEER.** To have your hook bit off with a Fish.

**SHOOT.** A Fish is said to shoot, when it swims away at the approach of the Angler, or his Rod.

**SILK-LINES.** Silk should not be mixed with hair ; but though silk-lines are very apt to rot and break, if they are chosen by any Angler, the lower part should be made of the smallest Lute or Viol strings.

**SILK-WORM-GUT.** A very good line ; always choose the roundest and clearest from Knots and Flaws.

## S M E L T.



Is a fish for shape not much unlike a Trout, only longer in proportion to its bigness. Its common size is about six inches long ; but near *Warrington* these Fish are often caught which measure twelve or thirteen inches.

The back is of a dusky colour, but the belly and sides shine like silver. Those who examine them attentively will find small black spots on the head and back. The body is covered with scales, which fall off with the least touch. The skull is so transparent, that the lobes of the brain may be distinctly seen through it. The Eyes are of a  
silver



silver colour. The lower jaw is a little more prominent than the upper, but they are both well furnished with teeth; two of which in the upper jaw, and as many in the tongue, are longer than the rest.

The flesh is soft and tender, and of a delicate taste; it is so highly in esteem, that they are generally sold at an extravagant price. All writers on this fish affirm, that it has the smell of a Violet; but the vulgar opinion would have it to be that of a Cucumber, or a green couch of Malt.

It is a fish of passage, and visits the *Thames* and other great Rivers twice a year, that is in *March* and *August*; in the first of these months they generally advance up the River as high as *Mortlake*, but in the last they make a stand about *Blackwall*.

In *March*, if the Spring be mild, prodigious quantities of this delicate fish make their appearance in the River *Mersey*, which often seems of a greenish colour from the vast bodies of Smelts which then swim about. At this time, every Boat, every Fisherman, and every net, is employed and even the Boys with Cabbage nets catch these fish, which are double the size of those usually caught in the *Thames*; often times the baskets, Pails Boats, and the very Banks, are filled with SPARLINGS, as they are called in *Cheshire*, where, from the great plenty, they are frequently sold at four pence *per* score.

Some of these fish have been caught in *Rostern Mere* and other still waters, where the Fishermen have washed the Spawn from their nets; but these fish appear lean and do not breed in ponds.

The best way of angling for them is with a *Pater-noster* line, with a small shot to sink it under water: your baits should be Earth bobs,  
Gentles

Gentles well scoured, paste or the Fish itself, cut into small bits sufficient to cover your hook; they are seldom caught with angling, as they stay about *Warrington* but a little time after they have spawned, but they are caught in the salt part of the River all the year round with nets.

SNAILS, whether black or white, with the belly slit, that the white may appear, are good baits for the Chub, early in the morning; and likewise good night-baits for the Trout or Eel.

SNIGLING. See EELS.

SPLICE. To splice is to join the broken parts of a rod together, by cutting them with a Plane into due form, putting Glue or Wax between, and twisting it over with waxed thread. To splice a line, is fastening the links together with waxed silk, &c. instead of knots.

STAND. A convenient place to fish at.

STICKLEBACK, or SHARPLING.



The STICKLEBACK is flat-bodied, sharp-nosed, and about two inches and a quarter long: he has three sharp Prickles on his back, and two on his belly, from whence he derives his name.

He is to be found in every river, lake, pond, and ditch. He is never caught in the streams or the deeps, but in the shallows, where the waters move but slowly. The bait should be a bit of a red worm upon a very small hook. You may take them without a hook if you pull very easy.

STONE-FLY lies under hollow stones at the River side. See FLIES.

STRIKE. To strike is to give a moderate jerk when the fish has taken the bait, to hook him fast.

STUR-

## S T U R G E O N.



The STURGEON is a long a pentagonous fish, that is, it has five rows of Scales, which divide the body into as many angles. The Belly is plain and flat.

The upper row of Scales which is in the middle of the back, are larger, and rise higher than the rest; the number of those is not determinate, being in some eleven, in others twelve or thirteen. This row reaches to the back-fin, and there terminates. The lateral rows begin at the head and end at the tail, consisting of thirty or thirty-one prickly scales. The lower rows, which bound or terminate the flat part of the Belly, begin at the foremost fins, and end at the second pair: each of these rows contain eleven, twelve, or thirteen Scales. Every row of Scales in general hath prickles on their tops, which bend backwards. besides these five rows, it has only two scales in the middle of the belly below the vent. The Head is of a moderate size, and rough, with very small prickles, as is the rest of the body between the rows of scales. The eyes are very small in proportion to the bulk of the fish, and of a silver colour. The snout, is long, broad, and slender, ending in a point. In the middle of the lower part of the snout, which is extended beyond the mouth, there are four barbs, or wattles placed in a right line, which cross the snout transversely. The mouth is small, void of teeth, and placed over against the eyes; it is a kind of a small pipe, which he can trust out or draw in at pleasure.

He

He has no jaws, whence it is plain he takes no nourishment but by sucking. The tail is forked, but in such a manner that the upper part stands out much farther than the lower. The colour of this fish is of a dusky olive, or dark grey on the back, but on the belly of a silver colour: add to this, that the middle part of the scales is white.

They are brought daily to the markets of *Venice* and *Rome*, whence it is evident that they abound in the *Adriatic* and *Tuscan* Seas; but they are small as indeed they all are that keep constantly in the salt water. In the city of *London* they are now frequently seen, being brought in the fish carriages which were first set on foot by the society for promoting Arts, &c. One of these fish was lately sold which weighed one hundred and fifty-three pounds weight.

In Rivers they increase to a monstrous size, some having been taken from fourteen to eighteen feet long; and *Cardan* saw one that weighed a hundred and eighty pounds: in the *Elbe* they sometimes amount to two hundred pounds; a *German* Prince once took one of two hundred and sixty pounds weight.

Of the spawn of this fish there is made a sort of Edible, which they call *Cavear*, or *Kavia*, and is a considerable merchandize among the *Turks*, *Greeks*, and *Venetians*. It is likewise in high esteem throughout *Muscovy*, and has lately been introduced on the *English* Table.

It is made after the following manner:

They take Sturgeon's spawn, and free it from the little fibres by which it is connected, and wash it in white-wine, or Vinegar, afterwards spreading it upon a table to dry; then they put it into a vessel and salt it, breaking the spawn with their hands, not with a pestle; this done, they put  
it

it into a fine Canvas bag, that the liquor may drain from it; last of all they put it into a tub, with a hole at the bottom, that if there be any moisture still remaining it may run out; then they press it down, and cover it close for use.

The *Italians* settled at *Moscow* drive a vast trade with *Cavear*, Sturgeons being caught in great plenty in the mouth of the *Volga*, and other rivers that empty themselves into the *Caspian Sea*.

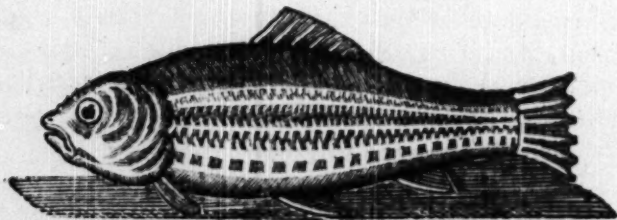
In *Holland* they cut these fish into small pieces, and pickle them: then they put them into Kegs and send them abroad. This is in great esteem among us.

The common way of killing them is with a harping-iron, for they take no bait; and when they feed, they root in the mud with their Snouts like hogs. In the *Mersey* they have been caught with nets, but commonly they prove too strong to be stopped by such entanglement.

**SWIM.** A Swim is the length of water that the float swims along the stream, and if clear of Grass and Weeds is called a good swim, or sail.

**SWIVEL.** One should be placed about a yard from the hook in angling for a trout, and one or two to the line in trowling for Pike.

## T E N C H,



Are generally met with in *England* of about five or six pounds weight, yet in some countries they grow to twenty. It is a short, thick, roundish fish, and is about three times as long as broad.

In



In this fish the sex is easily distinguished, for the fins on the belly are much larger in the male than in the female.

The flesh is in no great esteem for its salutary properties; for physicians, with one voice, forbid it to sick persons; and yet the taste of it is agreeable enough: but it is said not to be very easy of digestion.

The Tench delights in standing waters and ponds, and the still parts of rivers, whenever they are found there, for they seem to be the natives of standing water. However, they are said to breed in the Rivers *Stower* in *Dorsetshire*, and the *Tiber* in *Italy*.

Their time of spawning is the latter end of *June*, or the beginning of *July*; and they are in season from the beginning of *September* to the End of *May*.

Most Anglers declare that this fish bites best in the three hot months; and yet some have found they will bite at all times, and at all seasons, unless after a shower of rain, but best of all in the night.

The best baits for this fish are a middle-sized Lob-worm, red-worm, well scoured, a Gentle, a young Wasp, a Grub boiled, or a green Grub; or you may use the clotted black blood in a Sheep's-heart, made with fine Flour and Honey into the consistence of an Unguent; and your bait (when it is a red worm,) anointed with this, is by many preferred to other baits. But some have had more success with a red worm dipped in Tar, than any other. They bite almost in the same manner as the Pond carp, and will run away with your float; but when once you have hooked him, you are in no danger of losing him, if your tackle is but strong enough. The ground-

ground-bait should be the same as for all pond-fish, that is either blood, or Blood and grains mixed.

When the weather is very warm you must fish about mid-water, gently pulling your bait almost to the surface, and then letting it down as slow as possible.

Be not too eager in striking him when he bites, for as he delights in sucking the bait, allow him time, and he will not quit it.

Use a strong Grass, or Gut, and a Goose-quill float, without a Cork, except in rivers, where the Cork is always to be preferred.

Fish very near the ground; and if you bait with gentles, throw in a few at the taking every fish, which will draw them to your hook, and keep them together.

When you angle with a paste, let a little Tar be mixed with it. They bite best one hour before and after the sun rises and sets.

In hot weather you may snare them at the top of the water, as the pike, with a double wired link, not over twisted, hung in a noose, tied to a line, on a long rod: let it fall softly before him on the water, without touching him, till you have brought it over his gills; then pull gently and you have him.

They are very easily caught either with draft-apron, or Drum net.

N. B. Tench and Askers usually are found in the same Pond; if the latter begin to bite, it is time to leave that place, for that is a certain sign Tench have done at that time.

TRIM *a Fly*, is to cut off the superfluous or long hairs off the body.

TRIM *an Hackle*, is to cut off one side of the Fibres.

TROUL

TROUL, *Troul at home*, a lesson for young Anglers, advising them to fish first at the river side.

## T R O U T.



The TROUT is of a longish make, and resembles a Salmon more than any other fish. His head is short and roundish, his nose blunt, his body thick, and his tail broad ; his mouth is wide, and he has teeth not only in his jaws but in his palate and tongue.

Trout generally delight in the cooler and smaller rivers, which descend from hills and rocky mountains ; and they seem to take a pleasure in striving against the stream. It is really wonderful to see with what force and agility they will surmount all difficulties in travelling towards the source of rivers, let their descent be ever so rapid. And several authors tell us, that they are found among the *Alps*, in waters so very cold, that no other fish can live therein.

Their time of spawning is in *November* or *December*, when they dig holes in gravelly or stony places, and deposit their spawn therein: but they are not in season when they are full of spawn, for they are fattest and have the most delicious taste in the months of *July* and *August*. However, they begin to be in season in *March*, and are sooner so in some rivers than in others, particularly in the *Wandle* they are more forward than in any other about *London*, and there is near a month difference between that and *Hertford* river. What the reason should be is hard to guess ; but we may conclude

clude that that river more than commonly abounds with the Cadis Bait ; for there are variety of small fish in the other rivers for them to feed on ; whereas in that part of the *Wandle* frequented by the Trout there are none but Eels, Flounders, and Prickle-backs.

In the winter-time Trouts are sick, lean, and unwholesome, breeding a kind of worm with a large head, which is not unlike a Clove in shape ; then this fish seems to have a head of a larger size than ordinary, and those beautiful spots disappear, and the lively colour of the belly becomes dusky and disagreeable : But towards the latter end of *March*, when the sun with its genial warmth and influence begins to invigorate the earth, he then makes a shew of some spirit, and rousing, as it were, from a sort of lethargy, forsakes the deep still waters for the more rapid streams, where he rubs off his inbred foes against the gravelly bottoms, and soon after recovers his former strength and vigour. The flesh is a little drier, and not quite so tender as that of a Salmon ; however, it is esteemed the most agreeable of all fish that make their constant abode in fresh water.

There are several kinds of this fish, which are all valuable, but the best are the red and yellow Trout ; and of these the female is preferable, which is known by a less head and a deeper body.

The *Fordich* Trout, which is so much talked of, seems to be of a different sort from the rest, because it is almost as big as a Salmon, and lives nine months in the sea ; besides it is seldom or never caught with the angle, being supposed not to feed at all in fresh water ; and there seems to be a propable ground for this opinion, for when they are opened there is nothing found in their maw. Yet their return to the river is so very constant  
and

and punctual, that the fishermen know almost to a day when to expect them. When this fish is in full season the flesh of it cuts white.

The usual baits for a Trout are the Worm, Minnow and Fly, either natural or artificial. The proper worms are the Brandling, two upon a hook, Lob-worm, Earth-worm, Dung-worm, and Maggot, but especially the two first; and indeed, in fishing at the bottom the Lob-worm is preferable, nor is any other often used.

This fish, as before observed, delights in the swiftest streams; at a stream-tail in Spring, and latter end of Summer; in *May*, he keeps the upper end; and on the shallows in Summer, or at the aprons or tails of Mills; he is particularly fond of a hole covered with boughs, and where the roots shoot down to the water's edge, where he can find a good hold; in such a place you may find the largest; and consequently you must angle for them near such places. See the method of taking them in such places under the article of Running Line Angling, Page 18. When they watch for their prey, they generally shelter themselves under a bank or a large stone, or in the weeds, where they are often seen lurking entirely covered all but their heads. When they are discovered in this situation, go a little up the stream, and with great care and caution muddy the water, putting in your Bait immediately in the very place troubled; then keeping yourself as far from the bank as you can, in order to be out of sight, follow your float, and expect success; some say much better without a float.

Trout may be taken in this manner either with a Minnow or two well-scoured Lob-worms. When you use two Worms, put the first on the hook with the head foremost, and then slipping it a little up the  
the



the line to make room, put on the other with the tail foremost, after which draw the first down to it so close that they may seem to be knotting or engendering; for they often perform this naturally on the banks of rivers, and sometimes fall into the water, where they become a prey to the hungry fish.

This is likewise a good Bait when you angle in the morning twilight, or in the dusk of the evening, or even in the night when it is dark. In this case you must put no lead on your line, but throw your bait as gently as you can across the stream, and draw it softly to you on the top of the water. This is the best method of catching the oldest and largest Trout, for they are very fearful and shy in the day-time, but in the night they are bold and undaunted, and generally lie near the top of the water in expectation of meeting with food; for if they see any thing in motion, let it be what it will, they will certainly follow it if it glides gently along. If you put the point of your hook in at the head of your first worm, and out at the knot, and slip it a little way up the line that you may bait the other the same, that so both tails may play, you will find it will answer very well.

If you angle for a large Trout in muddy water, then it requires some art in baiting your hook; as suppose the bait is a dew-worm, here you must thrust the hook in towards the tail, a little above the middle, and out again below the head, then draw him above the arming of the hook, or whipping, so put the point into the head of the worm, until it is very near the place where the point of the hook first came out, and so draw back the worm, or that part that was above the shank. This hook should be indifferent large.

A Water-

A water-clearing after a flood, or dark, cloudy, and gloomy weather, when it is windy, is most favourable for worm-fishing. In *March, April, September*, and a part of *October*, the warmest sun-shiny weather, and middle of the day is best.

It is the practice of some to fish at the bottom in the dark, with a little silver bell fixed to the top of the rod, in such a manner, that when the Trout takes the bait, the sound of the bell may give notice of the bite; but some think this method is very precarious, because the least weed that touches your line as it comes down the stream will deceive you. The surest way is to hold your Rod in your hand, for as the Trout is a bold biter, you will easily perceive when he takes the bait: As soon as you have struck it, give it the but of your rod, for if you hold it the least upon a level, you run a great risque of losing your line.

There is a very killing method: make a pair of wings of the feather of a land Rail, and point your hook with one or more Cadis; your hook should be bristled, and the head of your Cadis kept close to your wings, and angle with a Rod about five yards, and a line about three; cast your wings and Cadis up the stream, which will drive it down under the water towards the lower part of the hole, then draw it gently up the stream a little irregularly, shaking your Rod, and in a few casts you will be sure to hook him, if there is one in the hole. You may angle the same way with two brandlings.

N. B. If you use two Cadis with your wings, run your hook in at the Head, and out at the neck of the first, and quite through the other from Head to the tail; this is a killing way for large Trout.

When you angle with a Fly, let your rod be rush-tapered, with a very slender top, that you may throw your Fly with greater certainty and ease; for if the top is too stiff, the Fly will be soon whipped off. Your line should be three times the length of your rod.

In this kind of angling you should place yourself so that the wind may be upon your back, or at least you must chuse such a time or place, that the wind may blow down the stream, and then it will assist you in laying your Fly upon the water, before your line touches it; for if your line touch the water first, it will cause a rippling that will fright the fish away.

The Cad bait upon the point of the hook with the artificial fly is recommended. Or another way to angle with the Cad bait is on the water, as with a fly. It must stand on the shank of the hook as the artificial fly, (not come into the bend, or the fish will not value it, nor if you pull the blue-gut out,) and thus it is a most excellent bait for a Trout. Where the river is not violently swift, you may place a very slender lead on the shank, and draw the Cad-bait over it: raise it often from the bottom, and so let it sink again. By which means you will find good sport, either in muddy or clear water. You may imitate the Cad-bait, making the head of black silk, and the body of yellow wax, or of shamoy.

When the fish appear at the top, they will take the Oak-worm upon the water, rather than under it, or than the Fly itself; and it is more desired by them. After you have dibbed with these flies on the surface till they are dead, cut off their wings, and fish with them at midwater, or a little lower. This is reckoned a valuable secret. You may dib for a Trout also with a Fly or Grasshopper,

per, as you do for a Chub, under a bush, by the bank-side, with a strong rod, and short strong line, if they do not rise after half a dozen trials, there are none there, or they dislike your bait.

You need not be very cautious in the choice of your Flies, for a Trout is not difficult, nor yet very curious about the season, for some have angled successfully with an artificial *May-fly* in *August*.

The time of the Trout's biting is from Sun-rising till near eleven in the morning, and from two in the afternoon till Sun-set; and yet the most certain times, are nine in the morning and three in the afternoon, especially if the wind be at South, for when it blows from that point it is most favourable to the angler. At this time if you angle with a Loach about a quarter of a yard deep in the stream, you are sure of catching fish. If you have not this bait, a Bull-head, with the gill-fins cut off, may prove a good bait; or a Minnow for want of the others.

And as the Trout may be deceived almost by any Fly at the top, so he seldom refuses any Worm at the bottom, or small fish in the middle; for which reason he is sometimes caught when trolling for Jack.

You may likewise dib for Trout in the same manner as you do for Chub, only let your Fly drop as gently into the water as possible, and keep it easily gliding along the surface; let it sink a little, and suddenly raise it again, with a strong rod, and a short strong line; but you must be sure to keep out of sight, for the shadow of your rod, or the flight of a Bird over the river, will make them fly almost as swift as the Bird, and it will be some minutes before they will shew themselves again. You will find good sport if you dib with the green Drake-fly whilst alive, which is

thus practicable: Gather a store of them into a long Draw-box, with holes in the cover to give them air, where also they will continue fresh and vigorous a night or more; take them out thence by the wings, and bait them thus upon the hook: First take one, for it is common to fish with two of them at a time, and putting the point of the hook into the thickest part of the body under one of the wings, run it directly through, and out at the other side, leaving him spitted across upon the hook, and then taking the other, put it on after the same manner, but with its head the contrary way; in which posture they will live upon the hook, and play with their wings for a quarter of an hour, or more: But you must have a care to keep their wings dry, both from the water, and also that your fingers be not wet when you take them out to bait them; for then your bait is spoiled.

With the Stone-fly you may likewise dib, but with this variation: The green-drake is common both to stream and still, and to all hours of the day, this is seldom dibbed with but in the streams, (for in a whistling wind, a made Fly in the deep is better,) but note, morning is the time: But much better towards eight, nine, ten, or eleven o'clock at night, at which time also the best fish rise, and the later the better, provided you can see your Fly, and when you cannot, a made Fly will murder.

There is a method of taking Trout in some parts of *England* by tickling them; there was a person who was very expert in that art; he would grope for them in their lurking places, and gently tickle their sides, which they seemed to be delighted with, till, at length approaching their gills, he held them fast, and made them prisoners; and it



is observed in the *Philosophical Transactions*, that Carp are sometimes taken the same way.

There are great quantities taken with the Spear and Lamp.

**BULL-TROUT, SALMON-TROUT,  
SALMON-PEALE, or SCURF.**



These are all different names for the same fish. In some places it grows to the length of twenty inches, in others it seldom exceeds sixteen; they have been caught near *Warrington*, and some have weighed near twenty pounds. It differs in shape from a Salmon in not having a forked tail; its head likewise is more short and thick than that of a grey, and its body is adorned with variety of spots. The flesh of those taken in *Yorkshire* is not red, as is the Salmon, and its taste is more strong and rank than that of the grey.

They are found in *Yorkshire*, *Dorsetshire*, and *Devonshire*, and enter the rivers the beginning of *May*.

They delight to lie in deep holes, and commonly shelter themselves under the root of a tree. When they watch for their prey, they generally chuse that side of the hole that is towards the stream, that they may more readily catch whatever food the stream brings down.

They will rise at an artificial fly like a Salmon: But the best bait for them is a well-scoured Brandling, especially those that breed in a Tanner's yard.

You may angle for them any time in a morning, and in the afternoon from five till night. They are in season all the summer.

When you try to catch them, remember to keep out of sight, and let your line fall into the stream, without any lead, except one single shot, and then it will be carried gradually into the hole. When you have a bite you ought not to strike too eagerly. They bite freely enough, and struggle hard for their lives.

It is worth while to observe, that some give the name of Salmon-trout, to a young Salmon, which has occasioned several to run into errors in treating of this fish. They have likewise in *France* a kind of Pond-trout, which they call a Salmon-trout, that grows to such a magnitude as to weigh above thirty pounds; and in the *Lemon Lake* near *Geneva*, there are some of this kind, that weigh fifty pounds.

TROWLING. See ANGLING.

VEER. To veer, is to let out your line from the Wince or Nut, after you strike a large fish.

UNGUENTS, or OINTMENTS, to allure fish to bite: Take Gum-ivy, and put a good quantity of it into a box made of Oak, like those the Apothecaries use of white wood for their pills. Rub the inside of the box with this gum, and when you angle, put three or four worms therein, letting them remain but a short time; for if long, it kills them: Then take them out, and use them, putting more in their stead, out of the worm-bag and Moss, and continue to do this all day.

Gum-ivy is a Tear which drops from the body of the larger Ivy, being wounded. It is of a yellowish red colour, of a strong scent, and sharp taste. That which is sold in the shops is often counterfeit and adulterate: Therefore, to get true  
Gum-

Gum-ivy, at *Michaelmas* or Spring, drive several great Nails into large Ivy-stalks, and having wriggled them till they become very loose, let them remain, and a Gum will issue out of the hole. Or you may slit several great Ivy stalks, and visit them once a month, or oftner, to see what Gum flows from the wounded part. This Gum is excellent for the Angler's use; perhaps nothing more so under the form of an unguent.

Take *Assa-fœtida*, half an ounce; Camphire, two drachms; bruise them well together with some drops of Oil of Olive, and put it in a Pewter-box, to use, as the receipt from Monsieur *Charras*. Some, instead of Oil of Olive, use the Chemical Oil of Lavender and Camomile; and some add the quantity of a Nutmeg of *Venice* Turpentine to it. But for a Trout in a muddy water, and for Gudgeons in a clear water, the best Unguent is thus compounded, viz.

Take *Assa-fœtida*, three drachms; Camphire, one drachm; *Venice* Turpentine, one drachm; beat all together with some drops of the Chemical Oils of Lavender and Camomile, of each an equal quantity; and use it as in the first direction.

Take *Venice* Turpentine, the best Hive-honey, and Oil of Polypody of the Oak, drawn by Retort; mix all together, and use it as the first Ointment.

Take Oil of Ivy-berries, made by expression or infusion, and put some in a box, and use it to scent a few worms just before you use them.

Dissolve Gum-ivy in the Oil of Spike, and anoint the bait with it, for a Pike.

Put Camphire in the Moss wherein are your Worms, the day you angle.

Dissolve two ounces of Gum-ivy in a Gill of Spring-water; mix them together with the like

quantity of the Oil of sweet Almonds ; then take what quantity of Worms you intend to use that day, being first well scoured in Moss, and put them in linen thrums (the end of the Weaver's Warp, when he has finished his piece) well washed in Spring-water, and squeezed : Then wet the thrums in this composition, and put them and the Worms into a linen bag, out of which use them.

Take *Assa-fœtida*, three drachms ; *Spikenard of Spain*, one drachm : Put them in a pint of Spring-water, and let them stand in a shady place fourteen days in the ground : Then take the solution out, and having drained it through a linen cloth, put to the liquor one drachm of *Spermaceti*, and keep it close in a strong glass bottle. When you go to angle, take what quantity of Worms you intend to use that day, (they being first well scoured in Moss) put them upon a pewter saucer, and pour a little of this water upon them ; then put them in the Moss again, and use them.

Take juice of Camomile, half a Spoonful ; Chemical Oil of Spike, one drachm ; Oil of Comfrey by infusion, one drachm and a half ; Goosegrease, two drachms : These being well dissolved over the fire, let them stand till they are cold ; then put them into a strong glass bottle, which keep unstopped three or four days ; stop it afterwards very well, and when you angle, anoint the bait with this composition.

Some add to it three drachms of the spirit of Vitriol, and call it the universal and infallible bait.

Take a handful of houseleek, and half a handful of inner green bark of the Ivy-stalk : Pound these well together, and press out the juice, and wet your Moss therewith. When you angle, put six or eight Worms therein out of the other bag.

Some

Some use the juice of Nettles and Housleek, as the last Receipt, and some only the juice of Housleek.

Some anoint their Baits with the Marrow got out of a Heron's Thigh-bone; and some use the Fat and Grease of a Heron.

Oil of Anise, Spikenard of *Spain*, Spermaceti, powdered Cummin-seed, Galbanum, are all highly commended, and may be tried singly or compounded; either mixed up in a Paste, or used as Unguents.

Make up a Paste with Mulberry juice, Hedgehog's Fat, Oil of Water-lilies, and a few drops of Oil of Penny-royal. Some highly commend this.

Oil of Amber, Rosemary, and Myrrh, alike of each, mixed with the Worms, or in Paste, is said to make the Bait so powerful, that no fish will resist it.

Sea-gull's Fat, mixed with Eringo Juice, is an attractive Unguent.

Unpickled Samphire bruised, made up in Balls for Ground-bait with Walnut Oil, is excellent for Carp, Bream, or Tench. Also Bean-flour, with a little Honey, wetted with rectified Spirits of Wine and a little Oil of Turpentine, made up in small Pellets, and thrown in over Night, will make the fish very eager, and keep them at the place; where you will be sure to find them next Morning.

Take the Oils of Camomile, Lavender, Aniseed, each a quarter of an Ounce, Heron's Grease, and the best of Asa-fetida, each two drachms; two Scruples of Cummin-seed, finely beaten to powder, *Venice* Turpentine, Camphire, and Galbanum, of each a Drachm; add two Grains of Civet, and make them into an Unguent;



guent; this must be kept close in a glazed Earthen Pot, or it loses much of its virtue; anoint your Line with it as before, and your expectation will be strangely answered.

**WALKING-BAIT.** A Bait in motion.

**WARP.** A Rod is said to be warped, when it is crooked by the heat of the Sun.

**WASPS, HORNETS, and HUMBLE-BEES.** The Brood of them are killing Baits when dried on a Fire-shovel, or Tile-stone, in an Oven that has cooled after baking: By this means they will keep long, and stick well on the Hook. If you want them for present use, you may boil them about a minute in Milk and Water. These are singular good Baits for Roach, Dace, Chub, Eel, Bream, and Flounder, and may try them for Carp, Tench, and Barbel, which will seldom refuse them.

**WEATHER.** See OBSERVATIONS.

**WEIGH.** To weigh a fish, is, to lift it out of water with a Rod and Line, without using the Landing-net, or Hook. It is very imprudent to weigh a stout fish; for, even when out of the water, he may flounce, and break the Line.

**WHETSTONE.** A small one is a necessary part of an Angler's Apparatus, to sharpen his Hooks, &c.

**WHIP.** To whip, is to use the artificial Fly, the casting which is called whipping.

**WHIP a TOP.** Is to wrap waxed Silk round the Joints after they are glued and dressed. Also to fasten your Hook to your Line.

**WINCE, or WHEEL.** A Brass Instrument, fixed on the inside of the Rod, near the butt-end, round which a Line of thirty or forty yards is rolled or wound, which, as soon as you hook a large fish you are to unlock, and let him run

run to what distance you please, by which method you may kill a fish of six or eight pounds with three hairs, if you keep him out of wood, &c.

**WISK.** To angle with a long line and artificial Fly.

**WOODCOCK-FLY.** See **OAK-FLY**, **ASH**, or **DOWN-LOOKER**.

**WORMS.** The **ASH-GRUB** is a milk-white worm with a red head, and may be had any time from Michaelmas till June. It is to be found under the Bark of an Oak, Ash, Alder, or Birch, if they lie a year after they have been cut down. You may likewise find it in the body of a rotten Alder, if you break it with an Axe; as also under the Bark of a decayed stump of a Tree. It is a good bait for a Grayling, Chub, Roach, and Dace.

The Brandling, Gilt-Tail, and Red-Worm, are all to be found in old dunghills, or the rotten earth near them; but the best are found in the tanners yards, under the heaps of bark which they throw out after they have done with it: the Brandling is most readily met with in Hogs dung. These are good baits for Trout, Graylings, Salmon Smelts, Gudgeons, Perch, Tench, and Bream, or any Fish that takes a Worm.

The **CLAP-BAIT**, or **BOTTR**, is found under Cowdung, and is like a Gentle, but bigger. You must seek for it only on land that is light and sandy, for it is much of the same nature with the Earth-Bob, and may be kept in wet moss for two or three days. It is an excellent Bait for a Trout, but almost every other Fish will take it.

The **COD-BAIT**, **CADIS-WORM**, and **STRAW-WORM**, are only different Names for the same bait. They are found in Pits, Ponds, Brooks

Brooks and Ditches, and are covered with Husks of Sticks, Straws, or rushes and stones. Those with Stones or Gravel husks are peculiar to brooks, and those with straw and rushes to ponds, and all the three sorts may be found at one and the same time. They are very good Baits for Trouts, Grayling, Carp, Tench, Bream, Chub, Roach, Dace, Salmon-Smelts, and Bleak. The green sort are found in *March*, the yellow in *May*, and a third sort in *August*. Those covered with rushes are always green, and those Stone husks usually yellow all the season.

About a week or nine days in *May* Cod bait fishing comes in season; which is the first Bait to be used in a morning, and may be continued to the middle of the day.

It is an excellent bait till the middle of *June*, and is to be used with a hook leaded on the shank, and the Cod bait drawn on to the top of it. It will take in deep waters as well as in streams, by moving it up and down about nine inches or a foot from the bottom; this is commonly called sink and draw. There is another method of fishing with Cod-bait, at mid water, but then you must put a Canon fly at the point of your hook.

This bait is a good bottom bait, if the water be clear; and is to be preferred to the Worm at least three degrees to one, because all sorts of Pool Fish, and even the Eel are great lovers of it.

The EARTH-BOB, or WHITE GRUB, is a Worm with a red Head, as big as two Maggots, and is soft and full of whitish Guts; it is found in a sandy light Soil, and may be gathered after the Plough, when the Land is first broke up from grazing. You may know in what ground to find them by the Crows, for they will follow the Plough

Plough very close where these Animals are to be met with. This is chiefly a winter bait, from the beginning of *November* to the middle of *April*, and is proper for chub, roach, dace, bream, tench, carp, trout, and salmon smelts. They are to be kept in a vessel close stopped with a sufficient quantity of the earth they were bred in, and they will be ready for use all the winter. From this bait arises the *May-fly*.

The Flag worm, or Dock worm, are found in the roots of Flags that grow on the Brink of an old pond. When you have pulled up the root, you will find among the fibres of it reddish or yellowish cases; these you must open with a pin, and you will find a small worm longer and slenderer than a gentle, with a red head, a palish body, and rows of feet all down the belly. This is an exceeding good bait for grayling, tench, bream, carp, roach and dace.

The LOB-WORM, DEW-WORM, GARDEN WORM, or TWATCHEL, as differently called, is a proper bait for Salmon. Trout, Chub, Barbel, and Eels of the largest size. It is to be found in gardens, or church yards, by the help of a lantern, late in a Summer's evening. In great droughts, when they do not appear, pour the juice of walnut tree leaves, mixed with a little water and salt, into their holes, and it will drive them out of the ground.

The MARSH-WORM is got out of Marsh-ground on the banks of rivers, and is of a blueish colour. It is a likely Bait for Salmon Smelts, Gudgeon, Grayling, Trout, Perch, Bream, and Flounders, in *March*, *April*, and *September*, tho' they use it from *Candlemas*, till *Michaelmas*, preferable to any other.

The

The TAG-TAIL is of a pale Flesh-colour, with a yellow tag on his tail almost half an Inch long; they are found in marled land, or meadows, after a shower of rain, and are a good bait for a Trout, if you angle for them after the water is discoloured with rain.

And here you must observe, that all Worms should be well scoured in Moss that has been well washed and cleansed from all dirt and filth; after it is wrung every day, both the Moss and Worms should be put into an earthen Pot close stopped, that they may not crawl out. This Pot should stand cool in Summer, and the Moss be changed every fourth Day; but in Winter it should stand warm, and if you change the Moss once a week it will be sufficient.

Besides these Worms that are to be found in the Earth, there are others, which breed upon different Herbs and Trees, which afterwards become Flies. The principal of these are, the Palmer-Worm, the Oak-Worm, the Crabtree-Worm, and the Caterpillar. These are to be kept in little Boxes, with holes to let in the air, and they must be fed with leaves of the same tree on which they were found. These are good baits for Trout, Chub, Grayling, Roach, and Dace.

All sorts of Worms are better for being kept, except Earth-bobs, and in case you have not been so provident, then the way to cleanse and scour them quickly, is to lay them all Night in water, if they are Lob worms, and then put them into your bag, with Fennel; but you must not put your Brandlings above an hour in water, and then put them into Fennel, for sudden use; but, if you have time, and propose to keep them long, then they are best preserved in  
an



an earthen Pot, with good Store of Moss, which is to be fresh shifted every three or four days in Summer, and every week or eight days in Winter, or at least the Moss taken from them, clean washed, and wrung between your hands till dry, and then put to them again; and when your worm, especially the Brandling, begins to be sick, drop about a spoonful of Milk or Cream upon the Moss; and note, that when the knot, which is near the middle of the Brandling, begins to swell, he is sick, and if care is not taken, will die. If you want to scour Worms in a little time, put them about an hour in grains and blood; then put them into clean Moss. Gilt-tails are soonest scoured by putting them in a woollen bag, and keep them in your Waistcoat pocket.

The Editor having gone through the English Alphabet, takes the liberty to tell Gentlemen, that the best way to secure Fish, is to transport Poachers: One of whom told him, that he could decoy all the Fish in a pit into a Net, by putting a proper quantity of Oil into a flint glass Bottle, cast on purpose, with a long neck, in the manner of an Oil Flask. Put your net in at the end of the Pit, twist a bit of whited brown paper, dip it into the Oil, where it will float; introduce a lighted Fir splinter, or a bit of Cotton tied to a Switch, with this light the floating paper in the Bottle; fasten the Bottle to a pole, draw it gently through the pit; the flat Fish and Eels, will follow the light till you get them within the place where you have spread your Net. This was told by J. N. of B. W. in *Lancashire*, who was acquainted with *Henry Holbrook*, a Tanner in B. W. to whom he sold Fish as stores for a Pond he had in his yard, where a large Dog was the guard.

At

At the end of the five years *Harry* called upon *J. N.* to help him to draw this Pond ; *N.* took a deal of pains to persuade *Harry* that the Fish were not big enough ; but the Tanner was obstinate : “ Hold, says *N.* I’ll tell you truth for once : I sold them to a man in *Stretton* four years ago ; stay but four days and I’ll steal them back ready fatted to your hands.”

If you net your Pond, ’tis two to one but ’tis robbed that night ; for the Carp being disturbed, run their noses into the side of the Pond, and are easily thrown out by a Poacher.

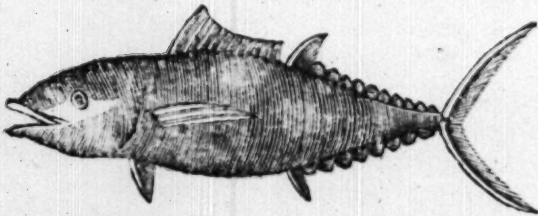
*Apostrophe.* At *Stockport*, Mr. *C.* a tradesman, had counted 19 Rabbits at the side of his sand Hill ; he lays hold of *S. L.* “ Come with me, and bring *Jack* with the Ferret.” *L.* could not shift off : Away they went, the Nets were clapped to the holes, the Ferret was turned in, but no Rabbits came out, “ Come, Master, says *L.* give us some drink, they’ll bolt by and by.” The drink opened *Jack’s* heart, and he whispered Mr. *C.* “ Damn my Master, says he, how should they bolt ? He has bolted some of them down his throat ; for the other night we put straw arms length into the holes and caught eighteen, which he made me carry home in a Sack.” “ Thank you *Jack*, says Mr. *C.*” “ Come *L.* you’ve had drink enough, take your nets and let me see no more of you.”

In the same Town lives Dr. *W.* who made a Fish Pond, and applied to *L.* for Stores ; twelve Tench were brought, and *L.* got a piece of Money and a cup of Ale ; the same was oft repeated, for *L.* was dry every day. “ Well, quoth the Doctor, now I’ve got all my heart wished for ; my Pond is stocked with a groce of fine Tench : *Jenny*, bring a tankard of Ale.” *L.* drank good luck to the Pond, and saw the Ale out, and soon after

after met one of his Companions in the Street;  
“ *Dick*, says he, I’ve got some of the Doctor’s  
Fees: He thinks I’ve sold him Twelve Dozen of  
Tench, but troth he has had but Twelve; what  
he paid me for in the Morning, I always stole at  
Night.”

## OF SEA FISH.

## ALBICORE.



**T**HE ALBICORE is about four or five Feet in length, sometimes more, and when largest weighs about one hundred and fifty pounds: It has large yellow eyes, a broad forked Tail of a greenish yellow; the Belly-fins are likewise yellow; the Belly is white, and when just taken shines like Silver.

This fish will follow ships for many hundred Leagues, and often proves a very seasonable relief to the Crews when provisions are short. It is either caught with a hook, or struck with a Fizzig. It is a strong fish when in the water. They live chiefly upon Flying-fish.

It is a very fleshy fish, having few or no Bones, except the Back-bone, and is accounted a very good fish.

The Albicore generally keeps company with another called a Bonettoe, but not the same Bonettoe, which, in *Cornwall*, is termed the Scad. It is about three Feet long, and two in circumference, has a sharp Head, a small Mouth, large Gills, a full Silver Eye, and a Tail like a Half-moon. It has

has no Scales except on the middle of the sides, where there is a Line of a gold colour which runs from the Head to the Tail; on this Line is placed a double row of Scales, which are smooth two-thirds of the length of it, and then begin to be rough till they reach the Tail. The colour of the Bonettoe is greenish on the Back and Sides, but on the Belly it shines like silver. It has seven Fins, two on the Back, two at the Gills, a pair on the Belly, just below the Gills, and one in the middle of the Belly opposite to the largest on the Back.

Both these fish are well known to all Sailors who have crossed the *Æquinoctial Line*; and they resemble each other in their shape, colour, and in the number of their Fins. But the Bonettoe is thought to be the finest eating by much: It is taken in the same manner as the Albicore.

#### AMERICAN OLD-WIFE.



This fish is often taken notice of in the Relations of modern Voyagers, being a fish well known to Sailors.

It is about two Feet long, and nine Inches broad, having a small Mouth and a large Eye. He has one large Fin on his Back, beginning at the hind part of his Head, and ending at the Tail; he has a pretty broad Fin on each side near the Gills, and another under the Belly. They are all  
of



of a very light blue, as the Body is of a deep blue. The edges of the Fins are yellow. His Body and Head have a great many spots and streaks seeming to cross each other.

The Sailors often take this fish in their voyages, and it is reckoned by them to eat agreeably enough.

## A N C H O V Y.



The ANCHOVY is a small fish about as thick and as long as one's Finger; but near *Chester* they have been taken much larger. The Body is of a rounder make than a Herring's. The Eyes are large, the Body of a silver white, and the Gills are of a shining red; the Snout is sharp; the Mouth wide, but without Teeth; yet the Jaws are as rough as a File. The Tail is forked.

Anchovies are very common at *Venice* and *Genoa*, as also at *Rome*. They are likewise plentiful in *Catalonia*, at *Nice*, *Antibes*, *St. Tropez*, and other places in *Provence*.

They are most commonly taken in the Night in *May*, *June*, and *July*; for in these three Months they leave the Ocean, and pass up the *Mediterranean* towards the *Levant*. When they fish for Anchovies, and would take a large quantity, their method is to light a fire on an Iron Grate placed at the Poop of the Ship, so that the fish seeing the light make towards it, and are more easily taken.

When the Anchovies are caught, they gut them, and take the Gills out of the Head, and whatever else is apt to putrify, and salt them.

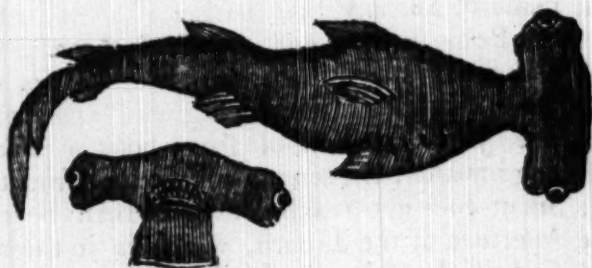
As to the manner of salting them, they do nothing else but range them in Barrels of different sizes,

sizes, with a proper quantity of Salt; the largest Barrels do not weigh above six and twenty pounds.

In chusing Anchovies, those that are least ought to be preferred; as also those that are white without, red within, that are firm, and have round Backs.

There is another sort of fish sold instead of Anchovies, called a *Sardin*, which is very probably a young Pilchard, it being larger and flatter than an Anchovy, and not so well tasted.

### BALANCE-FISH.



The BALANCE-FISH differs from all others in the monstrous shape of its Head, which is like a Smith's Hammer. It grows to a very extraordinary size, and is of the Shark kind.

The Eyes are placed on each side of the Head, as far from each other as it is possible for them to be; they are large, round, and look rather downwards than upwards. He has a very large Mouth placed underneath his Head, which is furnished with exceeding strong, broad, sharp Teeth. The Tongue is broad, and like that of a Man. The Body is round and long, not covered with Scales, but with a Skin like Leather. The Back is Ash-coloured, and the Belly white.

BIB. See COAL-FISH.

BONETTOE. See ALBICORE.

BOUNCE,

# BOUNCE, ROUGH-HOUND, or MORGAY.



The BOUNCE is sometimes seen above the length of two Feet, and is spotted like a Leopard. The spots are black, and the Skin Ash-coloured with a reddish cast; whence the *French* give it the name of *Roufette*.

The Belly is flat, and the Back broad; the Snout is shorter and more blunt than that of the Dog-fish; the Mouth likewise is greater and broader; the Jaws are full of sharp-hooked Teeth bending inwards; the tongue is broad and smooth; the Snout does not reach above an Inch beyond the Aperture of the Mouth, which is in the under side of the fish; the Nostrils are very large, the Eyes oval, and half covered with a Skin, the Gills have five Holes or Apertures on each side, the Fins are placed as in the Cut.

He is caught very frequently in the *Mediterranean*, and not seldom in the *British Ocean*.

There is another fish of this kind, which is called *Catulus Minor*, and differs from the former chiefly in being much less, and of a lighter colour.

The flesh of this last is commonly eaten, and is sold in the Fish-markets at *Rome*. The Skin of both is rough, and serves for the same purposes as the Skin of the Dog-fish,

BRILL. See PEARL.

BUT-

## BUTTER-FISH, or GUNNEL.

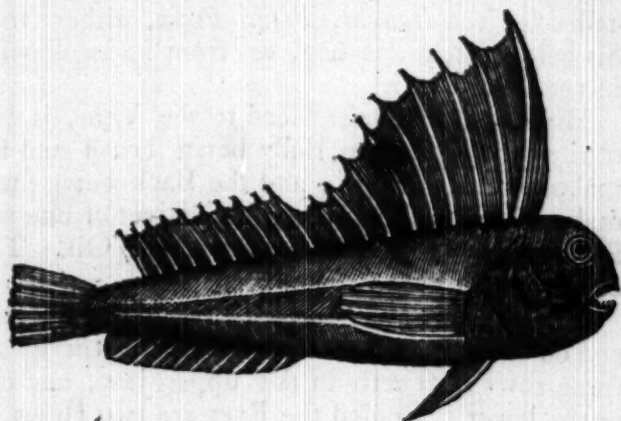


This fish sometimes attains the length of six Inches, but never exceeds an Inch in breadth. The colour varies, sometimes it is reddish, sometimes of a dark Olive, sometimes green and white like a variable Silk. At the root of the Back-fin, on both sides, are ten or twelve beautiful, round, black spots, encircled with a white Border.

The Head is little, the Snout short, the Mouth large, with one row of Teeth; the Eyes small, of a reddish yellow, and covered with a Cuticle.

This fish is taken frequently on the *Cornish* Coast; but of what use it does not appear.

## B U T T E R F L Y - F I S H .



The BUTTERFLY-FISH is about seven Inches long. It is of a light blue, or Ash-coloured, mixed with olive, or a dirty green. The Eyes are large, and of a Saffron-colour, being placed pretty near the top of the Head. The Mouth is not large.

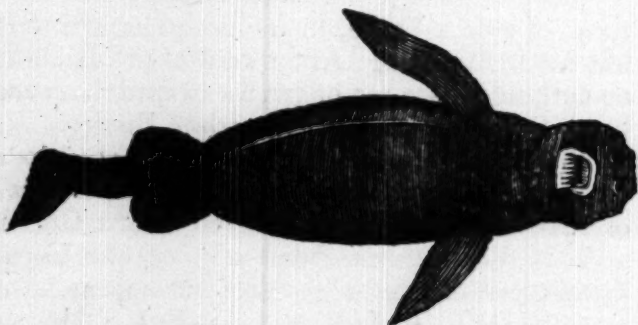
The

The Teeth are long and round, and placed in a regular order. The Tongue is soft, round, and fleshy.

It has only one Fin on the Back, which reaches from the Head to the Tail.

The Butterfly-fish is often exposed to Sale at Venice, among other small fish.

### C E N T R I N A.



The CENTRINA is of the Dog kind, and is called by the *Italians*, *Pesce Porco*, either from his being like a Sea-hog, or from his wallowing in the Mire.

His Body, from the Head to the Vent, is of a triangular shape; the Belly being broad and flat makes one of the sides, and the Back being sharp makes the opposite Angle. The Liver of one was so large that it yielded six pounds of Oil. The colour is of a dark brown.

The Head is small and flat; the Mouth is small, and on the under part of the Head; there are three rows of Teeth in the upper Jaw, and one in the lower. Behind the Eyes are two Holes in the shape of a Half-moon, which perhaps may serve for hearing.

He is taken in the *Mediterranean*, and brought to the Fish-markets at *Rome*. But seldom eaten, being of a poisonous nature.

COAL-



## COAL-FISH, or RAWLIN-POLLACK.



The COAL-FISH is very like the Whiting-Pollack, only the lateral lines are white, broad, and not so crooked; the colour more black, lively, and shining; the scales less, and the eyes larger and more protuberant. In a Cod the upper jaw is a little longer than the lower, but the direct contrary obtains in this, the under jaw being longer than the upper.

They are taken on the Coast of *Northumberland* and *Yorkshire*, and are called the Coal fish, from the black colour of their back and head: the young ones of this kind are called Billards, Pollards, and Rock Whittings.

Some reckon this Fish to be better than a Haddock, and inferior to a Whiting, or a Cod.

There is another Fish of this kind, which the *Cornish* people call a Bib, or Blinds, which grows to about the length of a foot, and is rather of a broadish make than thick and round. On the back it is of a light Olive or dirty yellow, and on the belly of a Silver colour.

A BIB may be distinguished from a Cod by its size, which is smaller; and by its shape, which is shorter and broader.

COCKLE. See OYSTERS.

## COD, or KEELING.



The COD is a Fish of about three feet long or upwards; those that are small are called Codlings. It has different names from the different places where it is taken, and from the different manner of curing it: Hence it is called Green-fish, Iceland-fish, Aberdeen-fish, North-Sea-Cod, Stock-fish, Poor John, and Barrell'd Cod.

It is a thick round Fish, with a large head and a prominent belly. It is brown on the back, white underneath, and is full of yellow spots: the scales are small, and stick close to the skin; the eyes are large, and covered with a loose transparent skin; on the lower Jaw is a barb of about an inch long; the tongue is broad, round, soft, and smooth; there are several rows of teeth in the Jaws, one of which is longer than the rest: there are likewise teeth on the palate and in the throat.

The stomach is large, and is often found full of small fish, particularly herrings.

The flesh is exceeding good, and highly esteemed. It is greatly in use as well fresh as salted; and in Lent, it goes by the general name of Salt-fish. The head of a large Cod is thought, by those who are judges of nice eating, to be a most excellent dish.

Fresh Cod, that is, Cod for present use, is caught every where on the coast of *Great Britain*; but there are particular times of fishing in particular

ticular places, because they are then found in great plenty. Thus from *Easter* to *Whitsuntide* is the best season at *Alanby*, *Workington* and *Whitehaven*, on the coast of *Lancashire* and *Cumberland*: On the *West* part of *Ireland* from the beginning of *April* to the beginning of *June*: On the *North* and *North East* of *Ireland* from *Christmas* to *Michaelmas*: and on the *North East* of *England* from *Easter* to *Midsummer*.

But the chief support of the Cod fishery are the Banks of *Newfoundland*, which are a kind of submarine mountains, one of which called the *Great Bank*, is four hundred and fifty miles long, and an hundred broad, and seventy five from *Newfoundland*. The best largest, and fattest Cod are those taken on the south side of the Bank; those on the North side are much smaller.

The best season for fishing for them is from the beginning of *February* to the end of *April*, at which time the fish which had retired during the winter to the deepest part of the sea, return to the bank and grow very fat.

Those that are taken from *March* to *July* keep well enough; but those in *July*, *August* and *September*, soon spoil. The fishing is sometimes done in a month or six weeks, sometimes it holds six months.

When *Lent* begins to draw near, though the Fishermen have caught but half their cargo, yet they will hasten homewards, because the markets are best at that time; and some will make a second voyage before others have got a sufficient cargo for the first.

Each Fisher can take but one at a time, and yet the most expert will catch from three hundred and fifty to four hundred in a day. They are all taken with a hook and line baited with the Entrails of

other Cod, except the first. This is very fatiguing, both on account of the heaviness of the fish and the coldness of the weather; for though the *Great Bank* lies from fort one to forty two degrees of Latitude, yet the weather in the season of fishing is very severe.

The usual salary allowed to the Captain and Sailors, is one third of the Cod that they bring home sound.

They salt the Cod on board the ship in the following manner: they cut off the head, open the belly and take out the guts; then the Salter ranges them side by side at the bottom of the vessel, and head to tail a fathom or two square: when one layer is complete, he covers it with salt, and then lays on another, which he covers as before; and thus he disposes of all the fish caught in the same day, for care is taken not to mix those of different days together. After the Cod has lain thus three or four days, they are removed into another part of the vessel, and salted afresh; and then it is suffered to lie till the vessel has its burthen. Sometimes they are put into barrels for the conveniency of carriage.

The principal places for fishing for Cod which is designed to be dried, is along the coast of *Placentia* in *Newfoundland*, from *Cape Race* to the *Bay of Experts*, within which limits there are several commodious ports for the fish to be dried in.

In this fishing, vessels of all sizes are used, but those are more proper which have large holds, because the fish have not a weight proportionable to the room they take up.

The time of fishing is in the summer season, for the conveniency of drying the fish in the Sun: On which account *European* vessels are obliged to set out in *March* or *April*: for as for those that begin

begin their voyage in *June* or *July*, their design is only to purchase Cod that are already caught and prepared by the inhabitants of the *English* Colonies of *Newfoundland*, and the neighbouring parts; in exchange for which we carry them Meal, Brandy, Linen, Melasses, Biscuits, &c.

The Fish which they choose for drying is of a smaller sort, which is the fitter for their purpose, because the salt takes more hold of it.

When the fishing vessels arrive in any particular part, he who touches ground first is intitled to the quality and privileges of Admiral, has the choice of his station, and the refusal of all the wood on the coast.

As fast as they arrive, they unrig all their vessels, leaving nothing but the shrouds to sustain the masts; in the mean time the mates provide a tent on shore, covered with branches of fir, and sails over them, with a scaffold fifty or sixty feet long, and twenty broad: while the scaffold is building, the crew apply themselves to fishing, and as fast as they catch any fish, they open them, and salt them on moveable benches; but the main salting is performed on the scaffold.

When the Fish have taken salt, they wash them and lay them in piles, on the galleries of the scaffold to drain; after this they range them on hurdles only a Fish thick, head against tail, with the back uppermost. While they lie thus, they take care to turn and shift them four times in every twenty-four hours.

When they begin to dry, they lay them in heaps, ten or twelve a-piece, to retain their warmth, and continue to enlarge the heap every day till it is double its first bulk; at length they join two of these heaps into one, which they continue to turn every day as before, and when they are thorough dry,



dry, they lay them in huge piles as large as hay-stacks.

Besides the body of the Fish, there are the tripes and tongues, which are salted at the same time with the Fish, and barrelled up. Likewise the roes being salted and barrelled up, are of Service to throw into the Sea to draw Fish together, particularly Pilchards. The oil is used for dressing Leather, and other purposes, in the same manner as Train Oil.

When Cod leave the Banks of *Newfoundland*, they go in pursuit of Whittings; and it is owing to this that the return of the Whittings is frequent on our Coast.

On the Coasts of *Buchan*, the *Scots* catch a small kind of Cod, which is highly prized; they salt it, and dry it in the Sun upon the Rocks, and sometimes in the Chimney; but the greatest part of it is spent at home. See STOCK FISH.

### CONGER, or SEA-EEL.



The CONGER is a very long Fish, being sometimes two yards, or two yards and a half in length, and of the thickness of a Man's thigh. It is made much like an Eel, but is larger, of a lighter colour, has bigger eyes, of a Silver-hue, as also two white lines on each side, composed of a double row of points, and a membranous Fin running

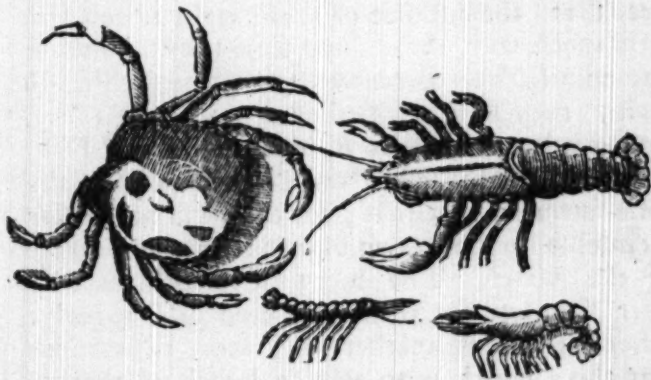
running all the length of the back to the very tail.

At the very end of his Snout, the Conger has two small horns, or tubes, from whence a mucous liquor may be expressed ; and the like has been observed in some kinds of Eels. In other respects it resembles an Eel.

The flesh is very white and sweet, but not easy of digestion. It was greatly esteemed by the Ancients, and does not want its advocates among the Moderns, especially when it is fried.

The young fry of this Fish are called Elvers in *Gloucestershire*, where they are taken in great plenty, out of the *Severn*, in dark nights: they herd together in such swarms, that they are easily caught with a kind of Net made for that purpose. They are supposed to travel as far as *Gloucester* and *Tewkesbury* out of the sea, for they are chiefly taken near those places: they are so small that they are made into cakes, and are sold very common in that form: their size does not exceed a small Needle, which makes it very surprizing how they should come so far in such shoals.

**CRAB, CRAWFISH, PRAWN and SHRIMP.**



The CRAB is much of the same nature as the  
 L. 4 Lobster,

Lobster, and may be caught in the same manner. They often lie in the mouths of Rivers, Creeks, and ponds made with salt water, and there they may be angled for with a piece of Liver, or the Garbage of a fowl. There requires no great art in the management of this sort of Angling; the bait needs only be tied to a string, and laid where they are supposed to be; as soon as they are aware of it they will seize it with their claws, and will not leave their hold till they are drawn up near the surface of the water: at which time a landing net should be conveyed under them, and by that means they may be brought safe to land.

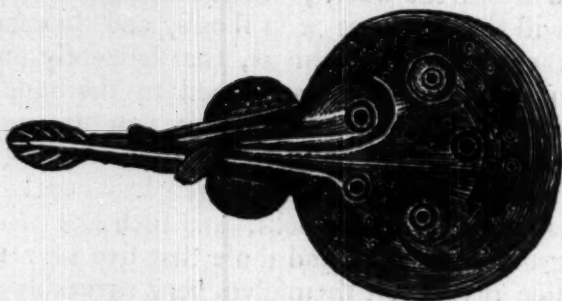
The CRAW-FISH, or CRAY-FISH, exactly resembles a Lobster in shape, and is to be found almost in every brook and rivulet in *England*. The usual way of taking them is by groaping, for they shelter themselves in little holes on the banks of Rivers, where they search for them with their hands; some will take in this manner several dozens in an afternoon: others will take a score or two of Rods, or small sticks, and split them at one end, so that they may put a bait in the cleft; these they stick in the mud at the side of the Brook at the distance of about eight or ten feet from each other. After some time they take them up, and if they perceive any game sticking to them, they slide a little basket made of Rushes, having a long handle to it, under the Craw Fish, and so take them safely out of the water in the same manner as Crabs; for they will not suffer themselves to be drawn higher than the Surface of the water. The best time for this sport is after Sun set, for then they feed most eagerly. There is likewise another way, more expeditious than this; which is to take a bunch of thorns, and lard it well with the thighs of Frogs, and  
throw

throw it into the water; in the evening the Crawfish will throng about it in shoals, and so entangle themselves in the thorns, that by gently pulling up the cord, which is fastened to the bundle, and slipping a basket underneath it, you may catch them every one.

The PRAWN and the SHRIMP harbour themselves in the holes of Rocks, and such like places along the Sea-coast; and those that live near the Sea-side may divert themselves very agreeably in spending an hour or two in catching them: the Net that serves for this purpose is something like a Cabbage-net, but deeper, and the Meshes smaller; this must be fastened to a bow, with a handle of the same shape and size as a tennis-ball racket. Those who would take them must be upon the spot as soon as it is high-water, that they may be ready with their nets when the tide begins to turn. At this time the nets must be thrust into the holes and clefts of rocks, especially such where Sea-weeds grow; when you lift them up, turn all that you take into a Pail, or some such thing, and then proceed from one part of the hole to another, till you think you have taken all that are there. You may try some places twice or thrice over; for when they are disturbed they will shift their station. By this method you may take several hundreds in an hour's time.

The flesh of all these sorts of Fish are of the same nature, and only differ in degree of goodness: they are all supposed to have a restorative quality, and therefore must be very nourishing and wholesome.

## CRAMP-FISH.



The CRAMP-FISH is of a circular figure, all but the tail, which is long and slender. It is said to grow to an extraordinary size; and yet one caught by *F. Redi* weighed sixteen pounds. Its colour is of a dirty yellow, resembling sand or gravel. Its Eyes are small, and almost covered with skin, behind which are two holes, in the shape of Half-moons, which are supposed to be the Organs of hearing. On the upper part of the body are five remarkable black spots, placed in the same form as in the cut, and are a little blueish in the middle.

The head of this fish is broad, and joined to the body, for which reason it seems to have no head at all; the extremities of the body end in fins. A little above the vent two fins arise, which have two appendages that serve for a Penis, as in the rest of the cartilaginous kind.

The most remarkable quality of this fish is, to benumb the hand of the person that touches it; and it performs this to such a degree, that it seems affected with the Cramp; from whence it derives the name of Cramp-Fish.

The famous *Redi* ordered one to be caught purposely that he might make a trial of the nature of this benumbing quality. As soon as he touched the

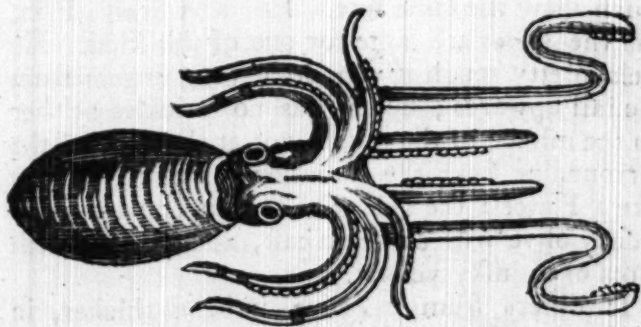


the fish, he found a tingling in his hand, arm; and shoulder, attended with a trembling, and so acute a pain in his elbow, that he was obliged to take his hand away. The same troublesome symptoms were renewed as often as he repeated the trial; however they grew weaker and weaker till the creature died, which was in about three hours. After it was dead, the benumbing quality quite ceased; for though it was handled never so much, it produced no effect.

According to *Borelli*, the stupefactive quality of the Cramp-fish does not proceed from any poisonous steam; because if he be touched when he is entirely at rest, no effect is produced at all: besides, if the fingers compress the extremities of the sides ever so strongly, the hand receives no damage; but if the hand lies upon the fleshy part near the back bone, the violent Vibrations of the fish will stupify it, and effect it with a sort of Cramp.

The flesh of the Cramp-fish is seldom or never brought upon the table, as being unwholesome.

### CUTTLE-FISH.



The CUTTLE-FISH is a deformed uncouth sort of fish; the name of which is well known on account of the bone, which is put to various uses.  
He

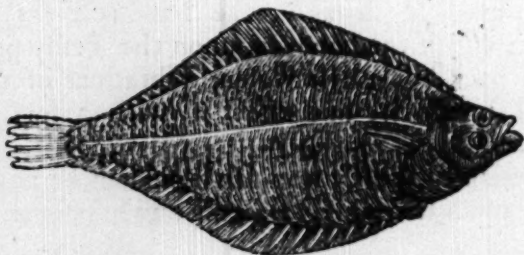
He has two trunks fixed to his head, which serve instead of hands; being not only useful in swimming, but in taking what serves for sustenance.

This Fish carries underneath his throat a bag, or receptacle, full of liquor that is blacker than ink, which he discharges when pursued, and by that means conceals himself from the sight of his enemies, and so makes his escape. Besides, he has six feet on the upper part, and two larger below, armed with teeth.

They are eaten very commonly in several parts of *France*, and are said to be good meat.

They live upon small fish.

D A B



The DAB is a little thicker than a Plaice, but much about the same size. He is a scaly Fish, and the scales are large for one of this kind. He feels pretty rough if you draw your fingers from the tail upwards; but he has no prickles neither on the middle of the sides, nor at the root of the surrounding fins: the situation of the eyes are like a Plaice: the colour of the upper part is of a dirty olive with a reddish cast, and speckled with spots of a dusky yellow.

It differs from a Plaice in being thicker, in having large scales, in having no tubercles near the head, and in wanting the vermilion spots; though some have yellow ones.

This fish is frequently met with in all parts  
of

of the sea that surround our Coast. The flesh is firmer, and is thought to be better relished than that of a Plaice.

**DOG-FISH, or PICKED DOG-FISH.**



The **PICKED DOG-FISH** has a roundish oblong Body, which is covered with a rough Skin of great use among the Joiners for polishing wood.

The Back is of a brownish Ash-colour. The Belly is white, and more smooth than the other parts. The Eyes are in the shape of a Boat, and covered with a double Membrane. The Mouth lies just under the Eyes, and is furnished with a double row of small Teeth. The Back is provided with two Fins; on the fore-part of both which are placed two Spines, or Thorns, from whence he is called the picked Dog-fish. The Males have two Penis's, which join to the Belly-fins, near the Vent. The Tail is a little forked, and the Fin that others of this kind have between it and the Vent is wanting.

The Dog-fish brings forth his young alive, which are produced from Eggs hatched within the Body of the fish. He never grows to any large bulk; the largest never weighing full twenty pounds. He has a large Stomach, and several Cuttle-fish have been found in it at once. He is frequently taken in the *British* Ocean, and in the *Irish* and *Mediterranean* Seas.

There is another Dog-fish, called the *Smooth* or *Unprickly Hound*, which is very like this, but he has neither Prickles nor Teeth.

The

The flesh of all these kinds of fish is rank and unwholesome.

DOLPHIN *of the Ancients.*



The DOLPHIN, properly so called, is a Ceteaceous fish, and is covered with a smooth hard Skin. He has an oblong roundish Body, is Hog-back'd, has a long round Snout which is turned a little upwards. The cleft of his Mouth is long, and shuts very close. The Teeth are small and sharp. The Tongue large and fleshy. The Eyes are likewise large, but so covered with the Skin, that nothing but the Pupil appears; they are placed not far from the Mouth, and almost in the same line. On the top of the Snout is a double Pipe, by which he spouts out the water; it is placed before the Brain, and communicates with the *Aspera Arteria*.

The flesh is blackish, and resembles that of a Hog. The parts which serve for Nutrition and Generation are more like Quadrupedes than fishes. In short, the Kidneys, Penis, Vulva, Testes, and all the internal parts, have a great likeness to those of Quadrupedes.

He differs from the Porpus in having a long Goose-like Snout, in being more slender and fleshy, but not so fat. The Porpus is less, but has a broader Back and a blunt Snout.

The Dolphin generates in the same manner as a Whale, and goes with Young about ten months, seldom

seldom producing above one at a time, or two at the most, and that in the midst of the Summer. They live a considerable time, some say twenty-five or thirty years. They sleep with their Snouts out of the water, and some have affirmed they have heard them snore. When they seem to play on the top of the water, it is a certain sign of an approaching tempest.

They swim very swift, which is owing to the strength of their Muscles, and are often in shoals; but there is never less than a Male and Female together.

They will live three days out of the water, during which time they sigh in so mournful a manner as to affect those with concern, who are not used to hear them. The flesh is seldom eaten but by very poor people, out of mere necessity.

#### DOLPHIN *of the Moderns.*



The DOLPHIN *of the Moderns* is taken from four or five to six or seven Feet long. It is a fish well known to Sailors, and by them greatly celebrated for its extraordinary beauty; but this beauty must consist in the colour rather than the shape, for neither the head nor the body are of such a regular proportion as to merit the least praise. The Back, Belly, and Fins are of a lively green, mixed with a silver colour; the Belly is white, but every part is spotted with a shining blue, which renders this fish a very agreeable sight both in the water and out. There is only  
one

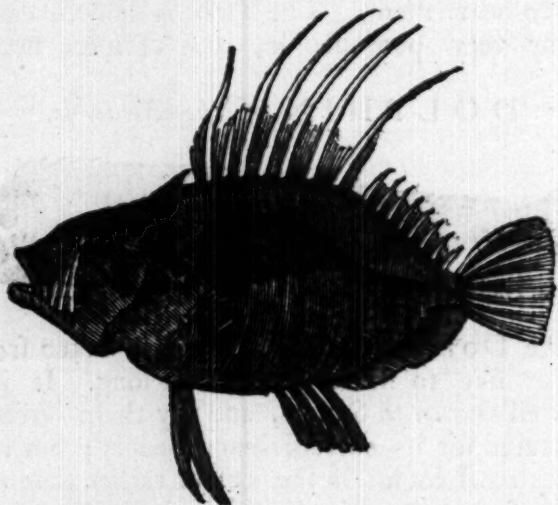


one broad Fin on his Back, which runs the whole length of his tapering Body, and always stands upright when he swims.

This fish is a very swift Swimmer, and will accompany a ship for a long while together, and very often proves a seasonable relief; and as the flesh is very well tasted, though dry, the Sailors are never backward in endeavouring to make a meal of them as often as they can.

The Dolphins are a great enemy to the Flying-fish; and are always pursuing them, which is one reason of their being seen so often out of the water. Some writers call this fish a *Dorado*.

### D O R E E.



The DOREE is a very broad flat fish, and almost every where of an equal thickness. He is shaped almost like a Plaice, but swims erect, and therefore ought not to be numbered among the flat fish.

The Head is very large; the Mouth monstrously wide; the Eyes yellow and great; the Sides are of an

an Olive colour, variously mixed with a light Blue. On each side there is a black spot as big as a silver groat. There are teeth in both the jaws ; the tongue is long, sharp and smooth ; the lateral lines bent as in the figure, the tail round.

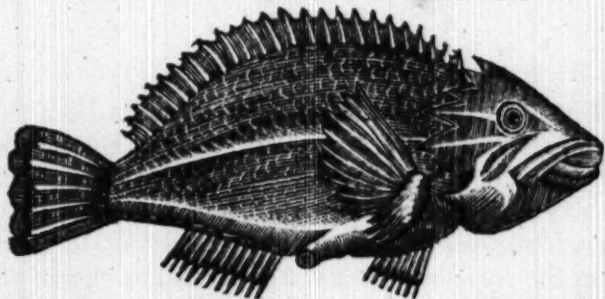
The size of this fish is generally about eighteen inches long and seven or eight broad.

The flesh is tender and easy of digestion, and by many thought superior to that of a Turbot.

This Fish was formerly hung up in Churches, on account of the remarkable spots that appear on each side, which were said to be the marks of *St. Christopher's* fingers, who caught this fish as he was carrying our Saviour over a ford : or, according to others, because this was the fish out of whose mouth *St. Peter* took the money wherewith to pay tribute ; and that the spots are elegant representations of the coin, being left as a memorial of the miracle. But these sort of fables meet with little credit now, even among the *Roman Catholics* themselves.

They are taken both in the Ocean and in the *Mediterranean Sea*, and are often exposed to sale at *Penzance* in *Cornwall* ; and have often been brought to the *London* markets by the land carriages for fish, and sold at a high price.

#### F A T H E R - L A S H E R.



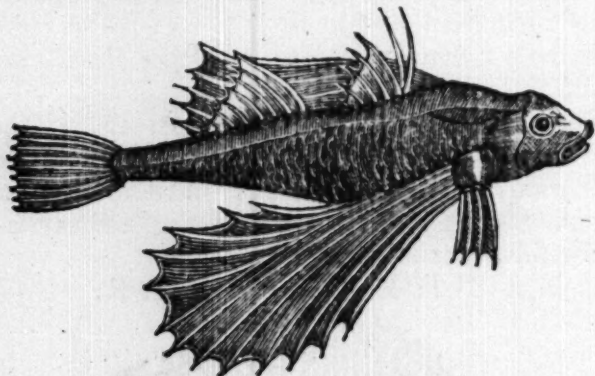
This fish, when full-grown, does not exceed  
nine

nine inches in length. It has some resemblance of a Miller's Thumb, the fore part being much larger in proportion than that towards the tail. It has no scales. The belly is broad and flat ; the sides are divided in the middle by a rough line ; the top of the head is black, and there are three or four black patches on the back, but the spaces between them are pale ; the sides beneath the line are yellow ; the belly is white.

The nostrils are small ; the mouth large, armed with several rows of small teeth ; the tongue is broad, large, and smooth ; the eyes are covered with a loose transparent membrane ; the pupils are small, and encompassed with a red circle. When the tail is spread it is somewhat roundish.

He feeds upon shrimps, small fish, and sea insects, as appears from opening the stomach.

**FLYING-FISH or SEA-SWALLOW.**

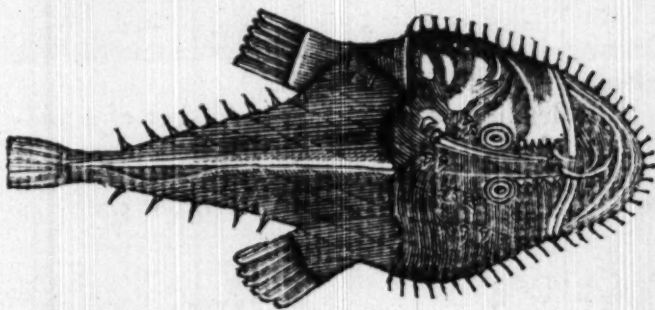


The **FLYING-FISH** is very common between the *Tropics*. There are several sorts of them, but they are all about the bigness of a Herring, and their Gill fins are so long and broad, that they look like wings ; with these they are enabled to skim along the surface of the water in the manner of a Swallow, insomuch that it is very common for them

them to fly into the ships which are sailing in those Seas. They are an excellent bait for the Dolphin, and are often made use of by the Sailors for that purpose. They cannot fly far, because their Wings soon stand in need of wetting.

There is a sort of a Flying-fish sometimes seen in the *Mediterranean*; between the *Tropics*, they appear by thousands at a time, and it is thought a very good diversion to see the art they make use of to avoid the Dolphins.

### FROG-FISH or TOAD-FISH.



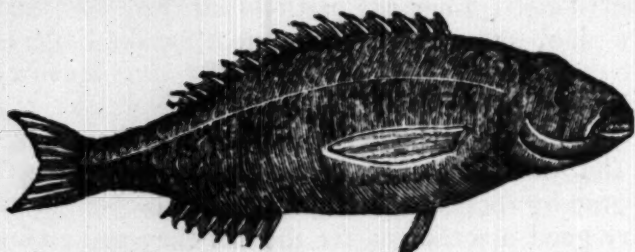
The FROG-FISH resembles a Tad-Pole in shape, and seems to be of a middle nature between the boney and the gristly fish. His Head is of a circular figure, and very large in proportion to his Body. His Mouth is monstrously wide, and the lower Jaw stands out an Inch farther than the upper. Both his Jaws are armed with long sharp Teeth. He has likewise Teeth on the Palate, and at the root of the Tongue, which is large and broad.

On the lower part of the Body, under the Throat, are placed two Fins which resemble the Feet of a Mole, by the assistance of which they creep at the bottom of the Sea.

The flesh of this fish is white when it is boiled, and resembles that of a Frog in taste.

GILT-

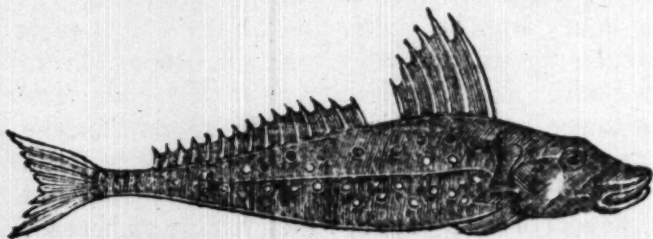
## GILT-HEAD or GILT-POLL.



The GILT-HEAD, so called from the remarkable Semicircle of a gold colour between its Eyes, is broad and flat, being in some respects like a Bream; it grows to be two Spans in length, but seldom weighs full ten pounds.

The flesh is neither soft nor hard, but of a middle consistence, and yields good nourishment. It is seldom taken in the Summer, but often in the Winter, when it is highest in season. It is seen in the Fish-markets of *Rome* in great plenty; nor is it a stranger upon the *British* coast, it being taken in the *Ocean* as well as the *Mediterranean*.

G U R N A R D, (G R E Y).



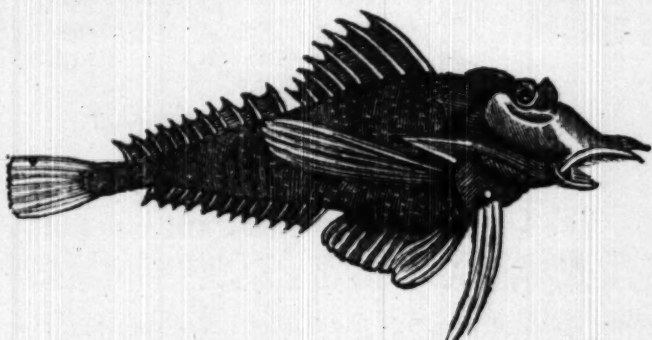
The GREY-GURNARD has a Back of a dirty green, sometimes speckled with black, and always with yellow or white. The lateral line is more rough and prominent in this than in others of the same kind. Under this line the sides are of a lighter colour, and fuller of white spots. The Belly, as in most other fish, is white; the Head

is



is large, and covered with boney plates, the uppermost of which serves for a shield to the top of the Head. It is very common in the *British* Ocean, and frequently met with in the South of *England*.

**GURNARD (RED), or ROTCHET.**



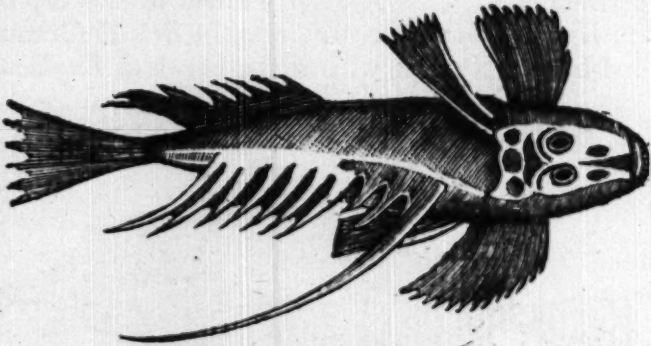
This fish is not so large as the Grey Gurnard, it never exceeding a Foot in length. It has a large boney Head, armed with Prickles; the Body gradually decreases in thickneſs from the Head to the Tail, which is very ſmall; both the Body and Fins are of a reddiſh colour, from whence it derives its name.

The fleſh is hard, brittle, white, well-taſted, and wholeſome, claiming a place among fiſh of the higheſt eſteem.

This fiſh makes an odd ſort of a noiſe, which ſome fancy to be like the ſinging of a Cuckow, others like the grunting of a Hog; others again affirm, that when it is taken out of the water and touched, it erects its Prickles, and cries *Curre* very plainly; whence, in ſome parts of *England*, they go by the name of *Curres*.

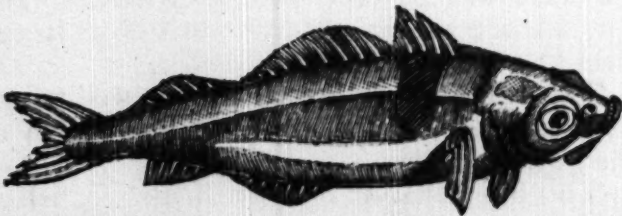
**GURNARD,**

## GURNARD, (YELLOW.)



This fish is very uncommon, and was first described by Dr. *Tyson*, in the *Philosophical Transactions*, N<sup>o</sup> 233. From the likeness of the Fins<sup>s</sup> he placed it among the Gurnard kind, for they had no name for it on the Coast of *Suffex*, where it was taken: He therefore calls it, *The smooth Gurnard of a blueish Yellow*.

## H A D D O C K.



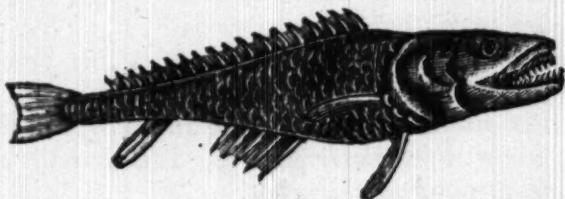
AN HADDOCK is of a middle size, between a Cod and a Whiting. This fish is blackish on the Back, and is covered with small Scales. From the upper corner of the Gills to the Tail there runs a black line; and on the middle of both sides, not far from the Gills, is a large black spot, which they say is a Mark made by the Finger and Thumb of St. *Peter*, that he might distinguish this fish from others, as being very much to his liking.

ing. The same Monkish Fable is told of another fish called the *Piper*.

The Eyes are large, and there is a Barb on the lower Jaw, about an Inch long. The Tail is forked. In other things it resembles a Cod.

Some reckon this to be but a coarse fish, and apt to cause Fevers; but that chiefly happens when it is taken in the Seas that are shallow and muddy, as about *Friesland*: But where the Seas are deep, and the water clear, this fish is wholesome enough, and the taste is far from being despicable.

### H A K E.



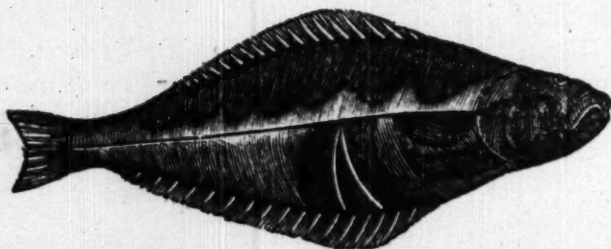
The HAKE is a fish about half a yard long, and sometimes more. It is shaped something like a Pike, from whence it derives its name.

*Willoughby* compares it to a Whiting, which it is most like, both in the shape and colour. The Back is of a light colour; the Belly of a dirty white; the Scales are small; the Head broad and flat; the Mouth is large, like a Pike's, and full of sharp Teeth. His flesh is soft and tender.

The proper time of fishing for Hake, at *Fiscard*, and other places between *Wales* and *Ireland*, is from *Whitsuntide* to *St. James's-tide*.

### HALYBUT.

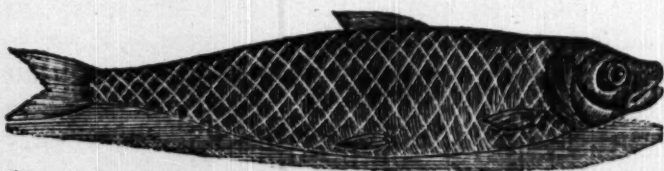
## H A L Y B U T.



The HALYBUT is the largest of all flat fish. It exceeds the Turbot greatly, and is of a longer make. One of these fish of a yard long, is about half a yard broad. Some of them weigh one hundred pounds, but those esteemed best to the taste, are from forty to ten pounds each. The *Jews* are very fond of it.

It is found in the *German* and *British* Oceans, and likewise in the *Irish* Sea. It is thought to be nearly as good as a Turbot.

## H E R R I N G.



The HERRING is a well known fish, of nine Inches or a Foot in length. It is commonly thought to be the *Halec* of the Ancients, which is a great mistake; for *Halec* is not the name of any sort of fish, but only of a Sauce to salt fish in general.

That which distinguishes this kind of fish from all others, is a scaly line that runs along the middle of the Belly from the Head to the Tail.

A Herring dies immediately after it is taken out of the water, whence the Proverb arises, *As dead*

as

as a *Herring*: the flesh is every where in esteem, being fat, soft and delicate, especially if dressed as soon as taken: that it is a fish every where in esteem, appears from the vast quantities that are taken and consumed, as well salted, dried, and pickled, as fresh.

It was a question formerly, whether Herrings fed upon any thing besides water; but *Lewenhoeck* has made it evident, that they come every year in pursuit of worms and small fish, which at the time of their arrival abound in the *Channel*; for when they have cleared the Northern Seas of their stock of Provisions, then they travel Southward in search of a fresh supply. Their most constant abode seems to be in the Seas between the North of *Scotland*, *Norway*, and *Denmark*, from whence they make annual excursions through the *British* channel, as far as the coast of *Normandy*.

The *Dutch* begin their Herring-fishery on the 14th of *June*, and employ no less than a thousand vessels therein: these vessels are a kind of barks, called *Busses*, carrying from forty-five to sixty ton, and two or three small cannon.

None of them are allowed to stir out of port without a convoy, unless they carry twenty pieces of cannon among them all, in which case they are permitted to go in consort. Before they set out they make a verbal agreement, which has the same force as if it was in writing.

The regulations of the Admiralty of *Holland* are in a great measure followed by the *French*, and other nations: the principal are, that no fisher shall cast his net within a hundred fathom of another's boat: that while the nets are cast, a light shall be kept on the hind part of the vessel: that when a boat is by any accident obliged to leave off fishing, the light shall be cast into  
M the



the sea: likewise, that when the greater part of the Fleet leaves fishing, and cast anchor, the rest shall be obliged to do the same.

The best times of fishing on the coast of *Norfolk* and *Suffolk*, near *Yarmouth*, *Lestoffe*, and *Southwold*, are from the middle of *September* till the middle of *October*. The nets that they use are about five yards deep, and twenty-five yards long: they sometimes fasten so many of these nets together as will take in a mile in compass.

They judge whereabouts the Herrings lie by the hovering and motion of the Sea-birds, which continually pursue them in expectation of prey: the Fishers, as they row gently along, let their nets fall into the Sea, taking their course as nearly as they can against the tide, that so when they draw their nets they may have the assistance of the tide. As soon as any boat has got its load, it makes to the shore, and delivers the Herrings to the Man who is to wash and gut them.

They distinguish their Herrings into six different sorts, as the fat Herring, which is the largest and thickest of all, and will keep about two or three months; the Meat-herring, which is likewise large, but not so thick nor so fat as the former; the Night-herring, which is of a middle size; the Pluck, which has received some damage from the nets; the Shotten-herring, which has lost its Milt or Spawn; and the Copshen, which by some accident or other has been deprived of its head.

All these sorts of Herrings are put into a tub with Salt or Brine, where they lie for twenty-four hours; then they are taken out and put into wicker baskets, and washed; after this they are spitted on small wooden spits, and hung up in a Chimney built for that purpose, at such distances that the Smoak may have free access to them all.

When

When they have filled these places, which will hold ten or twelve thousand, they kindle the Billets which are laid on the floor, in order to dry them; this done, they shut the doors, all other Air-holes being stopt before, and immediately the place is filled with smoke. This is repeated every quarter of an hour, insomuch that a single last of Herrings requires five hundred Billets to dry them. A Last is ten Barrels, each Barrel containing near a thousand Herrings. These, thus prepared and dried, are called Red-Herrings.

The Pickled-Herrings are best done by the *Dutch*, who take them for that purpose about the Summer Solstice. The usual method of pickling them is this: As soon as the Herrings are taken out of the Sea they are gutted and washed: then they are put into a strong brine, made with water and Sea-salt, for fifteen hours; after this they are taken out and well drained, and put in a regular order into Barrels, with a layer of Salt at the bottom of the Barrel, and another at the top. They then take care to stop them up carefully that no air may get in, nor brine out, either of which would be prejudicial to the fish.

Herrings always swim in shoals, delighting to be near the shore. They spawn but once a year, and that is about the Autumnal Equinox, a little before which, like many other fish, they are highest in season.

### HORN-FISH, or GARR-FISH.

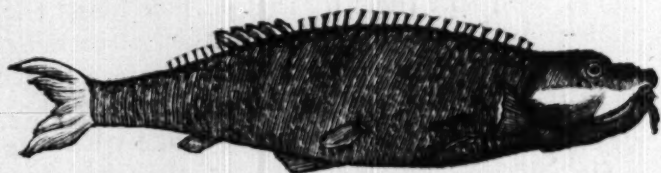


The HORN-FISH is a long, slender, and roundish fish. The snout is very long, slender, and sharp; the Head is flat, and of a blueish green; the lower Jaw is longer than the upper; but what

is most remarkable of all, the upper Jaw is moveable, as in a Crocodile.

It does not grow to any large size; for six of those that are usually taken will not weigh a pound. These fish are generally caught with Mackerel, and are very much of the same taste, but the Back-bone being of a green-colour, few people care to eat them on that account. But though the flesh is hard and dry, and consequently not very easy of digestion, yet it yields good nourishment.

### ISING-GLASS-FISH.



The ISING-GLASS-FISH has a very thick, heavy, large Head; the Mouth is very long and wide.

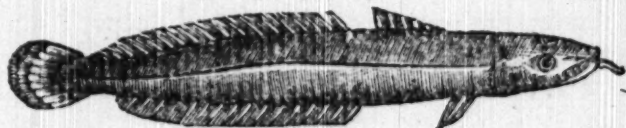
The length of this fish is about twenty-four Feet, and it weighs above four hundred pounds. It is usually met with in the seas about *Muscovy*, and in the *Danube*.

The fish is sweet and viscid, and eats best when it has been some time in salt; the flesh of the Back has the taste of Veal, and that of the Belly is thought to be as sweet and good as Pork. It is a very common Dish in *Muscovy*, and the Jelly is very wholesome and nourishing.

As to the manner of making the Ising-glass, the Guts, Stomach, Tail, Fins, and Skin, are taken and boiled till they are all dissolved that will dissolve; then the liquor is strained and set to cool; when it is cold, the fat is carefully taken off, and the liquor itself is boiled again to a just consistency

consistency, after which it is cut into thin slices, then hung upon a string and carefully dried. That which is clearest and whitest is best. The chief Consumption of this is by the Wine Merchants, who make use of it to fine, or force their Wine as they themselves term it.

## L I N G.

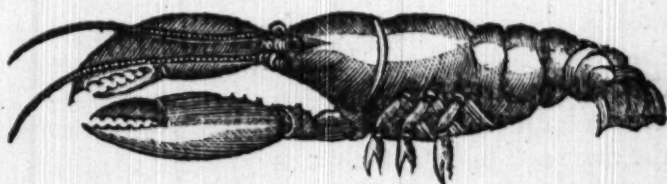


The LING has a body in shape long and round covered with small scales that stick close to it. The back and sides of some are Olive, of others Ash-coloured or Grey.

The Flesh of a Ling, when just caught, is very delicious, and when salted and dried is justly preferred before all other salt fish.

It is frequently taken near *Penzance*, and among the Islands of *Scotland*. On the North East of *England* it may be taken from *Easter* till *Midsummer*, and on the north-east of *Ireland* from *Christmas* to *Michaelmas*.

## L O B S T E R.

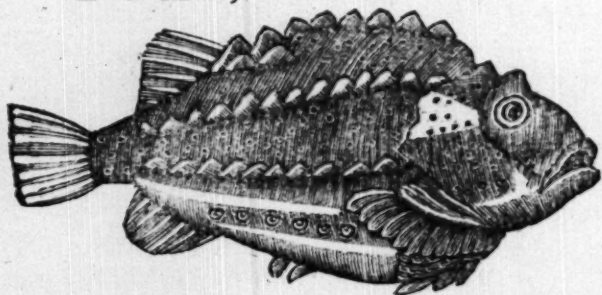


The LOBSTER is better known by sight than any description that can be given of it. They always feed at the bottom of the water, and are furnished with a pair of strong claws, with which they fasten on the larger prey that happens to come within their reach; but when none such offers, they search the beds of mud and gravel for the worms that commonly lie hid therein.

The best tasted Lobsters are caught off the *Isle of Weight* ; but those things few in quantity, the *London Markets* are chiefly supplied from *Norway* and the *Orkney Isles*.

Lobsters are taken with pots, as they are called, made of wicker work ; in these they put the bait and throw them to the bottom of the sea, in six or ten fathom water, or sometimes deeper : into these the Lobsters will creep for the sake of the bait and by that means is deprived of its liberty. Their flesh is sweet, restorative, and very innocent.

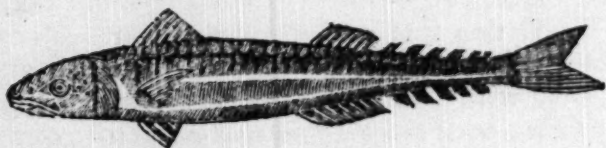
### L U M P, or S E A - O W L.



The LUMP is about a Foot or a Foot and a half long, and is a thick deformed fish, as the name implies. The belly is broad and red, the back is narrow, the body without scales, but there are black sharp Tubercles on all parts of the Skin.

It is a very common Fish, and frequently seen in the markets, but the flesh is in no great esteem.

### M A C K E R E L.



The MACKEREL is generally a Foot, and sometimes



times a foot and a half long. The body is long, round, thick, and fleshy, but towards the tail very slender and small. It is not entirely void of scales, but they are very thin and little. Underneath the lines that divide the sides in the middle it is of a bright silver colour, and above them of a blueish green; from the back towards the sides proceed several dark streaks, which by diversifying the Colour contribute greatly to the beauty of the fish.

It is a fish of prey, and exceeding voracious; there are often found small fish in its belly.

Mackerel are found in large shoals in divers parts of the Ocean, but especially on the coasts of *France* and *England*. They enter the *English* Channel in *April*, and take their course through the straits of *Dover*, insomuch that in *June* they advance as far as *Cornwall*, *Sussex*, and *Kent*, *Normandy* and *Picardy*.

They are taken either with the Angle or with Nets. When they are angled for, it must be out of a boat, smack, or ship that lies at anchor. The best bait for them is a bit of a Herring put upon a strong hook; but when this is wanting, a Shrimp, or a bit of any other Fish will do, or even a piece of scarler cloath; for they bite so freely there is no danger of not having sport; when you have taken one, their own flesh will serve for a bait. There is no occasion to be curious about your tackle, for you may even fish without a rod, and with several hooks at a time.

In the west of *England* they fish for them with nets near the shore, in the following manner: One man fixes a pole into the sand near the sea, to which he makes fast one end of a long net. Another in a boat takes the other end of the Net in his boat, and rows round in a circuit as

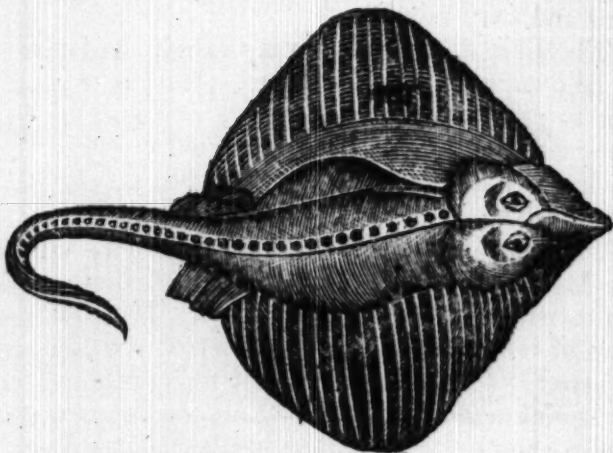
far as the length of the net will permit, and then back towards the shore; when his boat turns round he steps into the water, and taking the Cord of the net with him, drags the net towards the shore; then upon a signal given, both the Men draw the net out of the sea, and by this Method often catch three or four hundred fish; they are immediately carried away by horses, which wait for that purpose. The quantity of Mackerel taken upon that coast sometimes is almost incredible; and when they are so cheap they are not worth carrying away.

The flesh of a Mackerel is very good when fresh, especially if they are dressed when just taken out of the water; and there is such a difference between them and those that are brought to *London*, that it is not to be conceived by any that have not tried. However, they are not to be despised even when they are well cured by Pickling, and put up into barrels.

There are two ways of pickling them; the first is by opening and gutting them, and filling their bellies with salt, cramming it as hard in as possible, with a stick; which done they range them in Strata, or rows at the bottom of the vessel, strewing salt between the Layers.

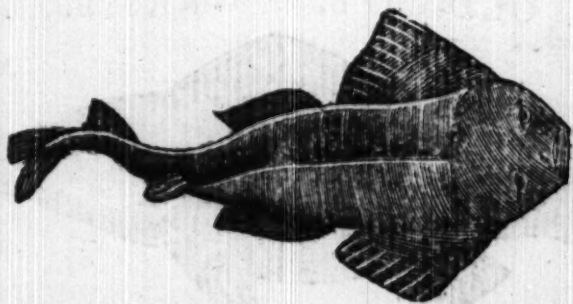
In the second way, they put them immediately into tubs of brine made of fresh Water and Salt, and let them steep so long till they think they have imbibed salt enough to make them keep; after this they take them out and barrel them up, taking care to press them down close.

( 249 )  
M A I D.



The MAID is a young Thornback, and though something like the Skate, is of a different species, the Maid often abounding with prickles issuing from round hard substances concealed within the flesh ; whereas the Skate is free from any prickles : Neither is it so much esteemed for delicacy as the Skate.

MONK, or ANGEL-FISH.



The MONK-FISH is of a middle nature between a Shark and a Skate. It grows to a large size, often weighing sixty pounds. *Rondeletius* affirms, they sometimes grow to the bigness of a

Man, and that he saw one which weighed a hundred and sixty pounds.

The Skin of this fish is very rough, and covered all over with a filthy slime. It is very much used to polish Wood and Ivory, and goes by the general name of fish skin. Its colour upon the Back and sides is of a dusky Ash; but on the Belly it is white.

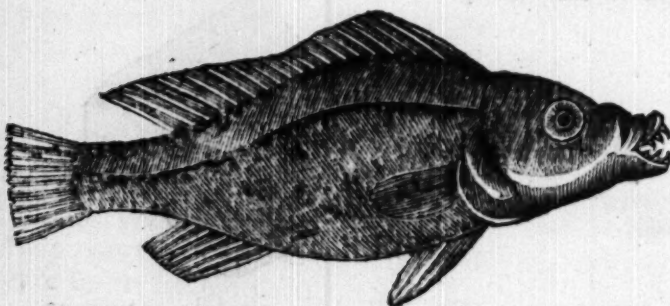
The Head is roundish at the extremity, where the Mouth is placed, quite different from those fish to which it seems to be allied. It has three rows of teeth in each Jaw, each row consisting of eighteen, so that the whole number amounts to one hundred and eight; but there is some variation in this.

The flesh of this fish is in no repute. The skin is in great request for making Sheaths, Cases, &c. *Jovius* affirms, that this is the skin of which the *Turks* make Shagreen.

The Monk-fish is to be met with in all parts of the Ocean, and is frequently taken on the Coast of *Cornwall*.

MUSCLE. See OYSTERS.

OLD-WIFE, or WRASSE.



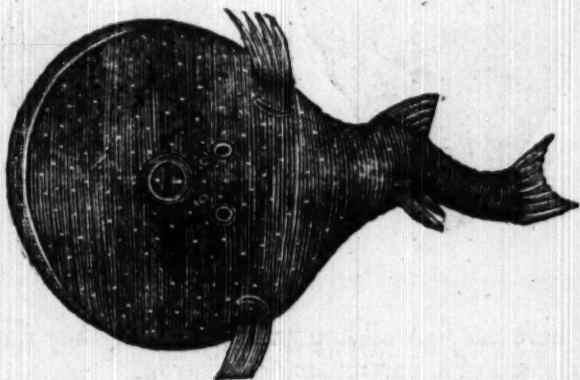
The OLD WIFE is in shape like a Tench, and in length about nine Inches.

The

The flesh is no way to be commended, either for an agreeable taste or wholesome properties.

The people of *Cornwall* call this fish a *Wrasse*; and the *Welsh*, *Gwrach*, which has some affinity to it in sound, and signifies an *Old Woman*.

ORB, or SEA WEATHER-COCK.

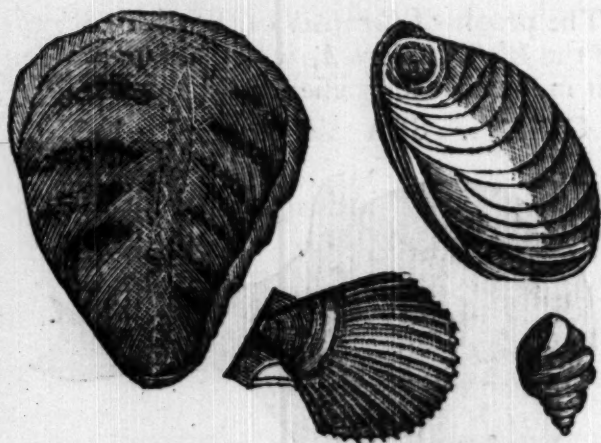


The ORB is taken in the mouth of the river *Nile* in *Egypt*. The figure is nearly spherical, the Tail only excepted. It is covered with a hard skin which is all over beset with sharp prickles.

This fish is not eatable, it being either all Head or Belly, which you please; and is commonly hung up in the Cabinets of the curious as a rarity.

OYSTER,



OYSTER, MUSCLE, COCKLE,  
and PERRIWINKLE.

These are so well known to all, that they stand in no need of a particular description.

The OYSTER casts his Spawn or Spat, in *May*, which at first appears like the drop of a Candle; it sticks to any hard substance it falls upon, and seems to be provided with a shell in two days time, and in three years they are fit for the market.

*Colchester, Mersey, and Bricklesea in Essex*, have been long famous for fattening great quantities in pits, or beds, contrived to admit the Sea water. From whence they are packed up in barrels, and sent to all parts of the kingdom in the months of *November* and *December*, being esteemed superior to any others of the kind.

These Oysters they term natives, and they are altogether incapable of moving from the place where they are first spawned. For this reason the Dredgers make use of a sort of nets, which are fastened to a strong broad Iron Hoop with a sharp

sharp edge, which they drag along the bottom of the Sea, and so take the Oysters.

The Oysters thus taken are carried to different places, where they are laid in beds, or rills, of Salt-water, in order to fatten them, and these they term layers. Those which, when they are spawned, happen to stick to rocks, often grow to a very large size, and are called Rock-Oysters. And it is so far from being strange that the Oysters stick to the rocks in this manner, that it is very common for Sailors to see millions hang on the roots of Mangrove-trees at low water, in the mouths of rivers, in many parts of the world. What is commonly said of their changing their sides at the ebbing of the tide cannot be true; for they have not the least power to do any thing but to shut and open their shells.

But it is otherwise with the MUSCLE and COCKLE; for they being lighter, are more liable to be carried along by any motion of the water, and if they cannot move themselves from place to place, they can, however, hinder themselves from being the sport of the waves. For this purpose they are capable of forming several strings, of the thickness of hairs, about three Inches long, and sometimes to the number of two hundred and fifty. With these they lay hold of any thing that is near them. Mr. *Reaumur* has often seen them making these threads, and when he has cut them off they have begun to make others. This mechanism is still more evident in the *Pinna Marina*, with regard to the fineness and number of their threads: This is a Shell-fish, which, on the coast of *Provence*, grows to the length of a foot, and on the coast of *Italy* to that of two feet. The production of this Animal is as fine as silk, and is made use of for the same purposes  
to

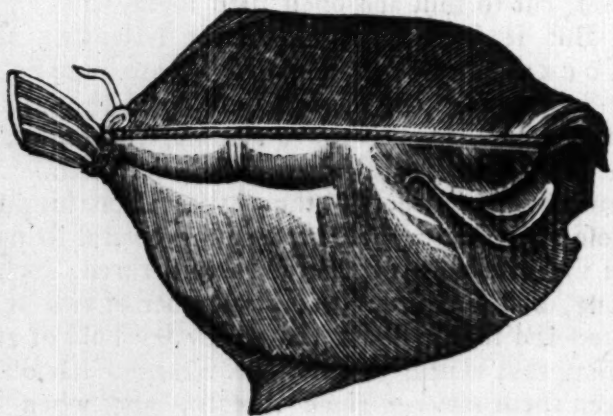
to this very day at *Palermo* in *Sicily* ; for they make various kinds of Stuffs, and other curiosities, of the Silk of this laborious shell-fish.

The instrument that the *Muscle* employs in producing these threads is what we commonly call the tongue, in the midst of which is a narrow channel, which serves as a sort of a mould for their first formation.

The *COCKLE* has likewise a power of making these threads as well as the *Muscle* ; the only difference is, that those of the *Cockle* are more thick and shorter.

As for the *PERRIWINKLE*, there is nothing remarkable can be said of it, but what belongs in common to all Animals that have shells.

#### PEARL or LUG-ALEAF.



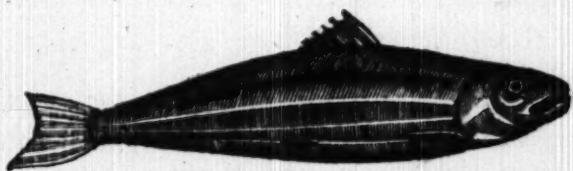
The *PEARL* differs from a *Plaice* much in the same manner as a *Turbot*, that is, in not having any rough lines at the root of the Fins which surround it ; in having the Eyes placed on the left side, to the right of the Mouth, and farther distant from each other ; likewise in having the Back-fin take its rise nearer the mouth.

Those

Those caught on the coasts of *Devon* and *Cornwall* are called *Brill*, and by some esteemed equal to Turbot, being a firm, well-tasted fish.

PERRIWINKLE. See OYSTER.

## P I L C H A R D.



The PILCHARD is never above nine Inches long, and is somewhat of a thicker make than a Herring. The Back is of a blueish green, the Belly and Sides of a silver colour; near the upper corner of the Gills, on both sides, there are black spots, and in some there are four or five placed in a right line towards the Tail. The Mouth is wide, but there are no Teeth, either in the Tongue, Palate, or Jaws. The Eyes are of a middle size, and of a silver colour, with a little tincture of red. In most other things it resembles a Herring.

The flesh eats admirably well, and is more firm and delicate than that of a Herring; and, besides, its salutary properties are no way inferior to its taste.

The Pilchard is a fish of passage, and swims in shoals in the same manner as the Herring and Anchovy. The chief fisheries are along the coast of *Dalmatia*, to the south of the Island of *Issa*; on the coasts of *Bretagne*, from *Belleisle* as far as *Brest*; and along the coasts of *Cornwall* and *Devonshire*. That on the coast of *Dalmatia* is so plentiful, that it not only furnishes all *Greece*, but a great part of *Italy*. That on the coast of  
*Bretagne*

*Bretagne* employs yearly above three thousand Sloops, and most of the Seamen of the country.

The Pilchards caught on our own coasts are not so much valued, though bigger, as those on the coast of *France*, which is owing to their not being so well cured.

The season of fishing is from *June* to *September*; though sometimes they are caught on the coast of *Cornwall* at *Christmas*.

Near *France* they use the roes of Cod-fish as baits, which, thrown into the Sea, make them rise from the bottom, and run into Nets placed for that purpose.

The Pilchards naturally follow light; and for that reason will gather about a Boat which carries a light in the Night-time; which renders the fishery much more expeditious and easy.

On the coasts of *Devonshire* and *Cornwall* they set men to watch on the tops of mountains and cliffs, whom they call *Huers*, who are able to discover when a shoal of Pilchards are coming, by the blackness or purple-colour of the water, and in the night by its shining. When the *Huers* perceive, by these marks, where the fish are, they direct the Boats and Vessels, by signs before agreed upon, how to manage their Nets, which they call *Saines*, by which means they often take at one draught a hundred thousand Pilchards, and upwards.

They lay the Pilchards in a heap, in a Warehouse, upon the ground, placing one layer upon another, with a sufficient quantity of salt between each; thus they go on, laying *stratum super stratum*, as the Chemists speak, till they are an Ell and a half high; after they have remained fifteen or eighteen days in this manner, and are thoroughly salted, they take them out and trust

wooden



wooden spits through their Gills, that they may wash them with greater ease. When they have been washed twice they put them into barrels, and press them down with heavy weights, which force out a great quantity of oil, serviceable for many Purposes ; then they fill the barrels up again, and sell them to the Merchants. This fishery yields great profit to the people of those parts.

### P I L O T - F I S H .



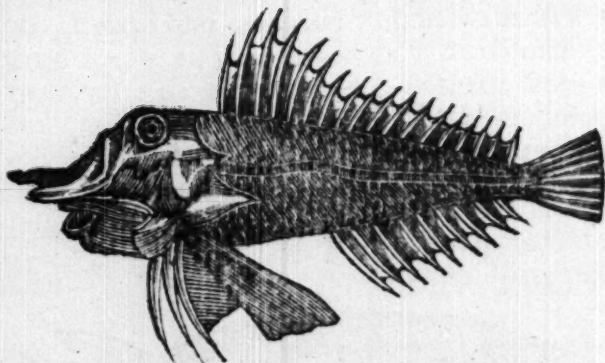
This fish is an attendant upon the Shark, and is never seen but in his company, generally swimming before him as though he was his pilot ; whence our sailors have bestowed the title of Pilot fish upon him.

That there is some natural friendship between these two fish, is pretty certain ; for they are always seen in each others company, but upon what account is very hard to determine ; though they are said to go before to direct the Shark to his prey. They are about the size of a middling Whiting and make a very beautiful appearance in the Water playing about the Shark, who will not meddle with them though he is ever so hungry.

They are most commonly struck with a Fizzig when they are taken, and are accounted a very delicate Morsel.

### P I P E R .

## P I P E R.



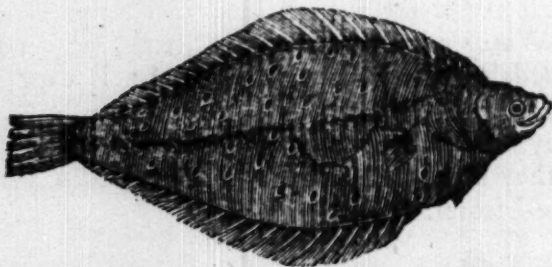
The PIPER is of the same colour as the red Gurnard, only the head is lighter, and has a yellowish cast. The snout is divided into two broad Horns, which, about the edges are armed with thorns or prickles.

It is met with both in the *British* Ocean, and the *Mediterranean* Sea. It feeds upon small Crabs.

The Flesh is of the same nature with that of the red and Grey Gurnard.

This Fish makes a sort of noise when he is taken out of the water, which has given the *Cornish* people occasion to distinguish him by the name of the Piper.

## P L A I C E.

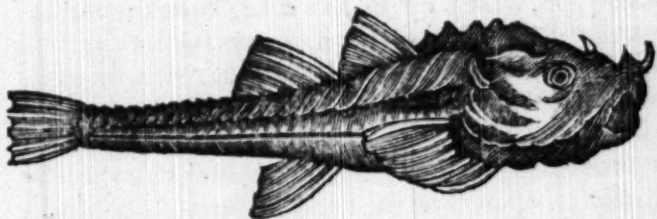


The PLAICE is a Fish extremely flat; sometimes we meet with them of the length of a foot, and  
seven

seven inches broad. The upper part is of a dirty Olive, painted with round spots of a Vermilion Dye; the lower part is white.

This fish is every where to be met with. The Flesh is soft, sweet, pleasant, and wholesome, and by some thought of equal goodness with a Soal.

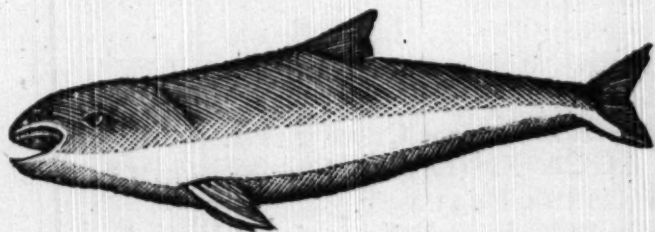
P O G G E.



The POGGE is about two hands breadth in Length. The head is but two inches broad at the most, each side of which is full of warts, or tubercles, which render it a very disagreeable sight. On the fore part about the Mouth, are a great many small bristles, and the hind part is armed with prickles which bend backwards.

This fish is generally taken in *Yorksbiſt*, and the Bishoprick of *Durham*. It is accounted a delicious morsel and feeds upon Shrimps, and fish of the minutest kind.

P O R P U S.



The PORPUS is a fish usually about six Feet long, and is very frequently seen leaping in and out of the water, especially before a storm, making an uncouth kind of a noise like snorting.

The

The shape is long and round, but towards the tail it is small, tapering like a Cone, and at the very root of the tail it is flat. The Snout is long and sharp, furnished with strong muscles to enable them to dig up small fish out of the sand.

He has no Gills, nor holes where the Gills should be ; but on the top of the head there is a wide pipe, which opens like a half moon ; and inwardly it is divided by a bony substance, as it were into two nostrils. These afterwards unite into one, and open with a single hole into the Mouth near the Gullet : the end of this aperture is provided with a strong Sphincter, whereby it may be opened or shut at pleasure. The upper part of the Nostrils are covered with a strong skin, in the manner of an Epiglottis, to hinder any Liquor from entering contrary to the inclination of the Fish.

The tail is placed horizontally, like the Whale's, which position is necessary, he being obliged to rise so often to take breath.

The Belly and all other parts of the body is covered with fat, which tends to preserve the Equilibrium between the fish and the water, otherwise it would be difficult for him to rise. The fat likewise is a great defence against the cold, which would otherwise extinguish the natural heat ; for it serves for the same purpose as good warm Cloaths in the winter time. The flesh is red, and looks very much like Pork.

PRAWN. See CRAB FISH.

ROCK-FISHING. See WHITING, and WHITING POLLACK.

S A N D - E E L, or L A U N C E.



The SAND-EEL is long and roundish, and has  
some

some affinity with an Eel, as the *English* name intimates. It seldom exceeds a foot in length, and is of the same shape and make as the Gar fish.

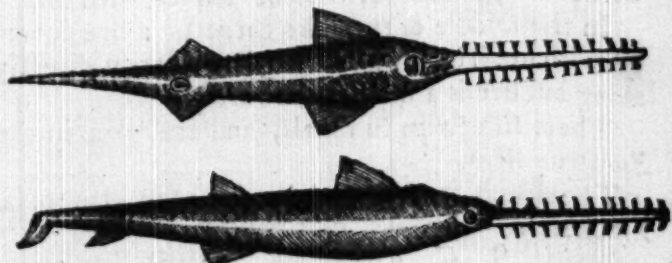
The flesh has a delicate taste, and is a very agreeable bait for other fish.

The males are short and thick, the females long and slender; the former being more turgid with the Milt than the other with the spawn.

They generally lie half a foot under the Sand; and when the tide is out, the fishermen dig them up with a sort of a hook made for that purpose.

There seem to be two sorts of sand Eels, one of which has but one Fin on the back, and likewise wants the belly fins. The fins of the other are placed as in the cut.

#### S A W - F I S H.



The SAW-FISH has often been treated of in an uncertain and fabulous manner; we shall therefore take care to say nothing about it, but what has been related by eye witnesses themselves.

For Magnitude it may be reckoned among the cetaceous kind, but has nothing else in common with them. The body both in shape and colour, has a great resemblance of the Dog Fish. *Frazier*, who in his voyage to the *South Sea*, happened to see a Saw-Fish, says, the mouth of it is like that of a man. The saw serves as a defence for it against the Whale, as he judged from an engagement



engagement he happened to see between them on the coast of *Chili*.

### SCAD, or BONETTO.



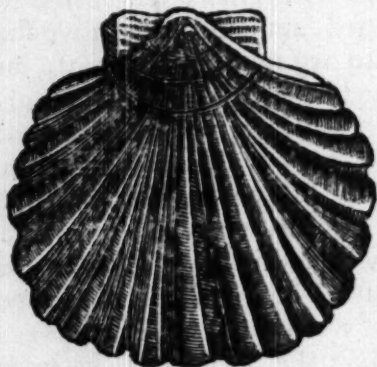
The SCAD is like a Mackerel both in shape and taste, for which reason the *French* give it the name of the bastard Mackerel; but it is considerably less than a Mackerel; and not of so round a make. The back is of a shining blue; the Belly of a silver colour, with a tincture of purple; the borders of the gills seem to be stained with ink.

In the middle of the sides there is a line covered with small boney plates; it does not run directly along but bends a little downwards.

These fish swim in shoals, and are taken in the *European Seas*.

The Flesh is dry and harder than that of a Mackerel.

### SCOLLOP.



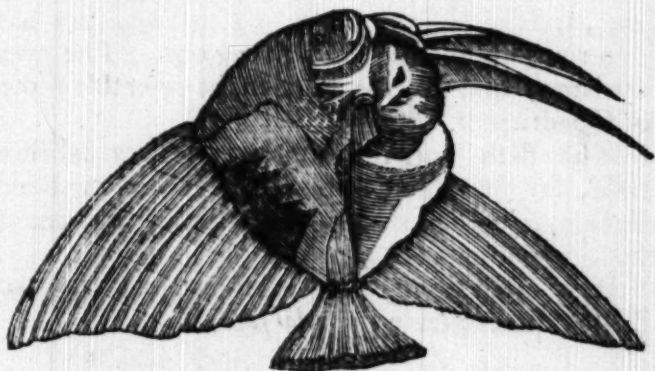
The SCOLLOP is a Shell fish of a sweeter and  
more

more agreeable taste than an Oyster, and is more easily digested.

This species in particular are covered with shells soon after they are generated; but as soon as the fish begins to grow bigger, the shell will not entirely cover his body and consequently a small part of it will begin to appear through the opening of the shell; from this part there proceeds a thick viscous substance, from whence an additional piece of the shell is formed.

These are not much esteemed, but are caught on the Coast of *Cornwall* and *Devonshire*.

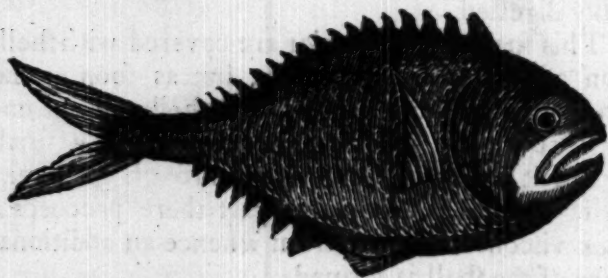
### S E A - B A T.



The SEA-BAT is about eight inches and a half in breadth from the extremity of one fin to the extremity of the other. The breadth of the body is no more than three inches and an half; and the length from the end of the snout to the tail fin is about five, whereof the tail itself is somewhat more than an inch.

SEA-

## S E A - B R E A M.



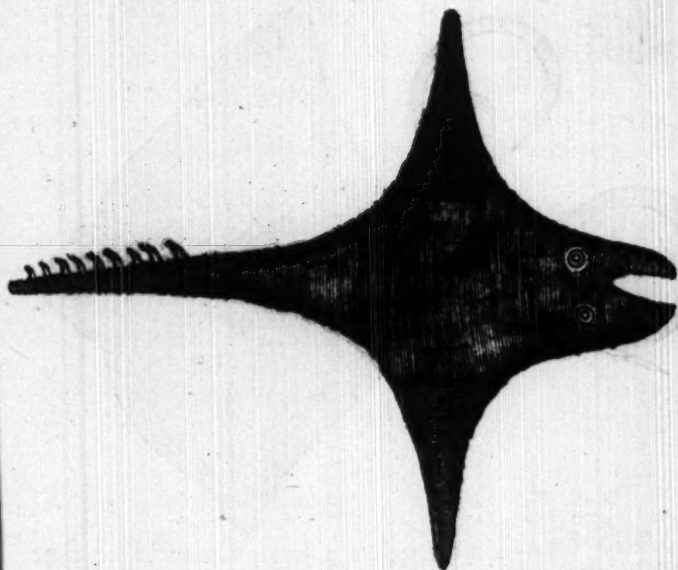
The SEA-BREAM is a flat scaly fish, about twenty six inches long, and ten broad. The tail is very small, and the fin of it long and forked. The back is black, the sides are of a lighter Colour, and the belly is white. The lower jaw has two rows of teeth ; the upper, one. The eyes are large, and for colour and shape resemble those of Quadrupeds.

The flesh cuts red, and is of a very delicate taste, far surpassing either the River or Pond Bream, inasmuch that it seems allied to them in nothing else but the name.

It is often caught in rock fishing, and by the Salmon fishermen in the *Mersey*.

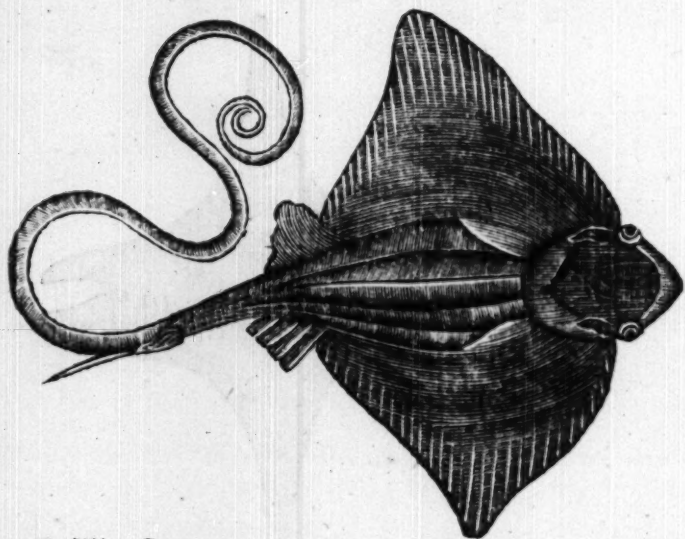
SEA-

## S E A - D E V I L .



The SEA-DEVIL takes its name from the monstrous and frightful appearance it makes in the water. The Snout is cloven into two parts, which look like horns; on each side are two narrow fins; on the Back especially near the head, are very dark spots. It grows to the length of four yards, seems to be of a Thornback kind, but very strong, and often breaks the harpoon with which he is struck. Its flesh has a rank taste.

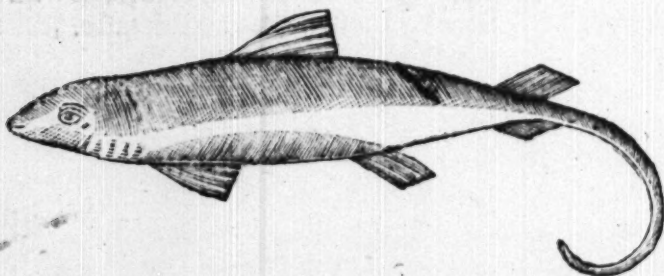
( 266 )  
S E A - E A G L E .



The SEA-EAGLE has a head almost like that of a toad. The sides are expanded like Wings, and the tail is exceeding long and venomous. Those that are usually taken are small, yet sometimes they weigh three hundred pounds.

The flesh is soft and moist, having a rank nauseous smell, and is rejected as well by the Peasants as people of fashion.

S E A - F O X , or S E A - A P E .



This Fish is so called, from the Length of his tail,



tail, as well as from the strong smell of the flesh, which is like that of a fox ; though some think he had these names given him on account of the natural cunning wherewith he is endowed.

He grows to as enormous a size as any of the Shark kind, and sometimes weighs hundreds of pounds.

*Rondeletius* affirms he once saw a Sea-fox opened, in which were several young ones of the same kind ; from whence he concludes, that this fish, as well as the Shark, foster their young in their bellies ; though the fishermen, who were spectators believed he had devoured them as food ; but they being alive, and unhurt, he supposed proved the contrary.

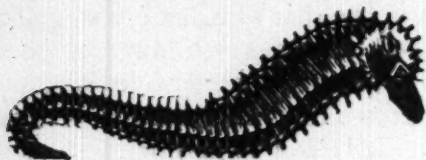
### SEA-GUDGEON, or ROCK-FISH.



The SEA-GUDGEON is a slender roundish fish, about six inches long, and sometimes more. The colour is light blue, mixed with olive, and spotted with Black. They have likewise transverse streaks of an olive colour, which are pretty broad, and look agreeable enough.

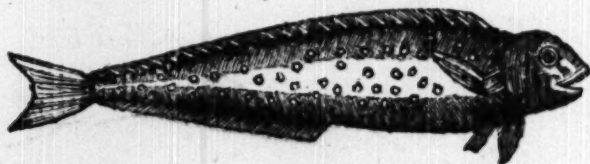
It is a soft slippery fish ; it is scaly, indeed, but the scales are very small. It is always to be met with in the fish markets of *Venice*, and is taken or in ponds made by the sea-water. It is tender, and in very great esteem.

## S E A - H O R S E.



The SEA-HORSE never exceeds nine inches in length, and is about the thickness of one's thumb. It has a head and snout of the same shape as those of a horse, and the body is full of clefts, or scissures. It is taken in the *Mediterranean*, and likewise in the *Western Ocean*. There is a large amphibious Animal, called by some a Sea-Horse, which ought not to be mistaken for this.

## S E A - L A R K, or B U L C A R D.



The SEA-LARK is called in *Cornwall* the *Mulgranoc* and *Buleard*. The colour on the back is in some of a dark green or olive; others are prettily painted with streaks of a light blue, and the spaces between are murray, or fillemot. But the colour in most greatly varies.

He lurks in the Holes and Cavities of Rocks, and often bites the Fishermens hands, but without any bad consequence.

## S E A - L O A C H, or W H I S T L E - F I S H.



The SEA LOACH is properly a sea fish, because it is never to be met with out of the salt-water;

water ; but it is very common near the Coast and in the Creeks of the *Baltic*, where they call it *Aelpute*, or *Eel-Pout*, and is probably the same fish which at *Chester* they call the *Sea-Loach*, and in *Cornwall* the *Whistle-Fish*.

It is about a foot in length, or somewhat better. The skin is smooth, of a dusky yellow on the back and full of black spots.

The Sea-Loach brings forth her young alive, and the Females seem to conceive about the *Vernal Equinox*, because about that time they begin to have spawn like other fish ; but the eggs are very small and white, like nits. About *Whitsuntide* the eggs begin to look a little reddish, and to attain the size of a grain of Mustard-seed : likewise about that time they begin to soften, for when they first appear they are hard. After this they begin to assume an oblong figure, and to discover two blackish specks, which are the rudiments of the eyes and head. Then the belly begins to appear, and afterwards the tail, about the thickness of a very fine thread.

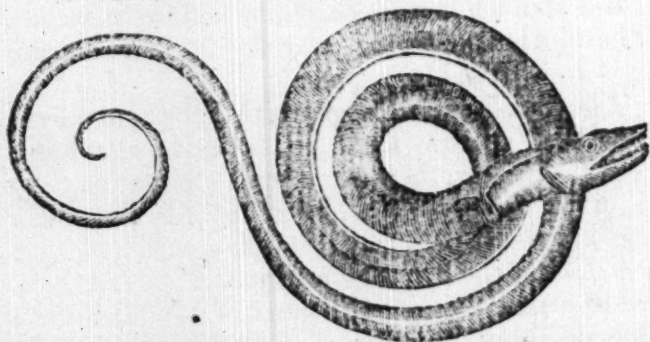
As the Eggs encrease, the belly is not only distended with their bulk, but with a slimy liquor full of slender fibres, by which means the tender bodies of the young fry not only lie soft and in a regular order, but are kept from crouding and hurting each other.

When the young ones are cut out of the Uterus, they bend their bodies like Eels, moving their mouth and gills, and live several hours. The time of their being excluded naturally is about the *Winter Solstice*. The males are distinguished from the females by being less, and of a brighter yellow whereas the female is more of an ash-colour.

After the *Summer Solstice* the sea Loach retires from the Shore and Creeks into deeper places,

where they have a particular kind of lurking-holes, from whence they are taken by the fishermen; but sometimes they go out of their reach. 'The flesh is hard, and not very agreeable.

# SEA-SERPENT.



The SEA-SERPENT is commonly about five Feet long. The body is exactly round, slender, and of an equal thickness, except towards the tail where it grows sensibly more slender.

The colour of the upper half is of a dusky yellow like the dark side of old Parchment or Vellum; the lower part is of a british blue. The snout is long slender, and sharp, and the mouth opens enormously wide.

The flesh is very well tasted and delicate, but is full of very small bones, and therefore cannot be eaten without some trouble. It is taken very frequently in the *Mediterranean*.



# SEA-SNAIL.

The SEA-SNAIL, when it is just taken, is brown on the back, and white on the belly; but in ten or twelve hours after, it becomes of a much lighter colour.

colour. The head is round, the mouth void of teeth but the jaws are a little rough.

The whole fish, as well the head as the body, is very soft and unctuous, and is easily resolvable into an oily liquor; whence it justly deserves the title of *Snail*.

It is not taken in the sea, but in the mouths of Rivers four or five miles from it.

### SEA-UNICORN, or NARWAL.



The SEA-UNICORN is often found near *Iceland*, *Greenland*, and other countries that lie very far north. It is a kind of Whale, and carries a smooth large horn at the end of his snout. It is of a spiral figure, and may be seen of different weight and sizes in the cabinets of the curious, some of which are at least three Ells in length. These are the horns which are commonly shewn as a great rarity for Unicorn horns, and to which they attribute, upon a very slight foundation, such extraordinary virtues.

He is said to carry this Horn for his defence, and is so courageous that he will venture to attack the largest whale.

### S E A - W O L F



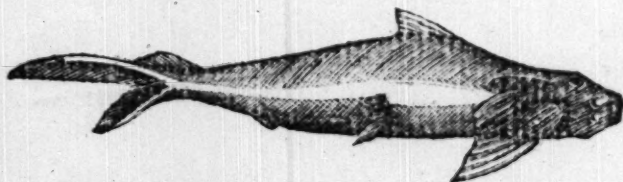
The SEA-WOLF is taken near *Hillingland*, not far



far from the mouth of the *Elbe*. The Head is larger and more round than that of a Dog-Fish. They grow to be near a yard long, and are caught in all parts of the ocean.

He is a very voracious animal, and well furnished with dreadful teeth. They are so hard, that if he bites the fluke of an Anchor, you may hear the sound, and see the impression of his teeth.

### S H A R K.



The SHARK sometimes grows to so large a bulk, that when he is laid upon a cart, two horses are scarce able to draw him. Some authors mention instances of their weighing two thousand, others four thousand pounds, and that there have not been only whole men, but once a man in armour found in their bellies.

That this is a voracious animal many of our Sailors have found to their cost, having often lost Legs, Arms, and even a great part of their thighs in the Jaws of these monstrous creatures.

It appears from hence, that a Shark must have a mouth of a very extraordinary size, and likewise a proportionable head. The mouth is not placed, as in other fish, at the end of the snout, but under the eyes, at some distance from it, which obliges him when he takes his prey, to turn on his back. He has six rows of teeth, which are extremely hard and sharp, and of a triangular figure; there are seventy two in each Jaw, which make one hundred and forty four in the whole.

It has a most monstrous stomach, and an extremely wide throat.

The

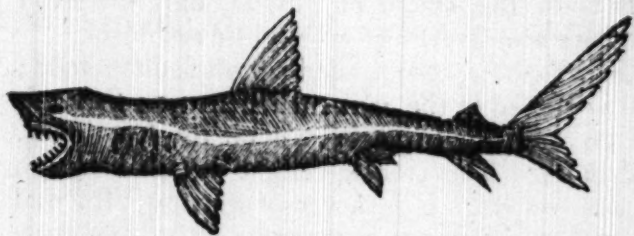
The flesh of a Shark is white, and has no very discernible rankness in the taste. Some Physicians, particularly *Galen*, condemn it; and yet our Sailors often venture to feed upon it, and find no ill consequences attend it. The method of the *Buccaneers* was first to boil them, then to squeeze them dry, and afterwards to stew them.

The method of taking them, when they are seen to hanker about a ship, is to bait a large Iron hook, made fast to a thick rope, with a piece of salt beef, which he will swallow very greedily, and then they drag him on board.

He is to be found not only in the *Mediterranean* sea, but in all parts of the Ocean, and is extremely fond of human flesh, when any person is so unhappy as to come within his reach.

If ships in the *Guinea* trade happen to throw a dead slave overboard, there are seldom wanting three or four Sharks to tear him to pieces in an instant.

### S H A R K, (B L U E).



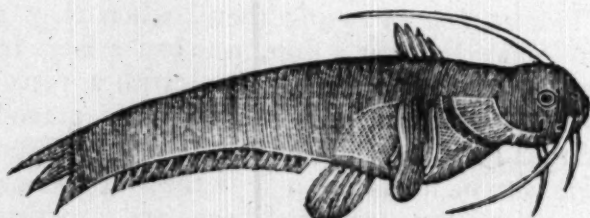
The BLUE SHARK is as bold and mischievous a fish as any that swims. His Back is of a lively blue, and his Belly of a silver colour.

The stomach of the blue Shark is so large, that the Tunny fish is often found entire therein.

This fish is sometimes taken two yards and two yards and a half long. He is very fond of human flesh, and watches all opportunities of seizing the

legs of those that are within his reach ; nay, there are instances of his following Boys that have walked along the shore, and attempting to snap at their heels. His flesh is tough, rank, and hard of digestion ; yet it is sometimes eaten.

# S H E A T-F I S H.



The SHEAT-FISH sometimes grows to a large bulk, weighing eighty pounds. In the *Elbe* there have been taken some that have weighed one hundred and twenty pounds ; and in the *Vistula*, that runs into the *Baltick*, they are sometimes caught sixteen feet in length, and twenty-seven Inches in breadth.

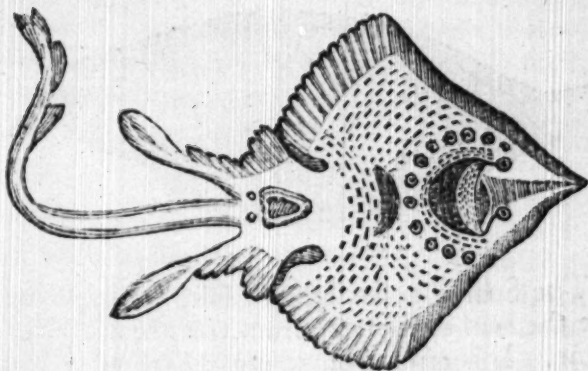
It is of the colour of an Eel, only the Belly and sides are diversified with white and black.

The flesh is commended as wholesome food ; and is dressed in the same manner as an Eel. It is found in many large rivers upon the Continent, and in some lakes ; their delight being in rough muddy waters. It is a very voracious fish, and upon that account is reckoned very mischievous. This is not indeed a Sea-fish ; but as it is not caught in our own rivers, it comes in as properly here as any where else.

SHRIMP. See CRAB.

S K A T E,

## S K A T E, or F L A R E.



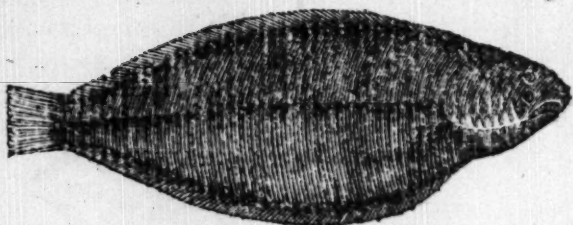
The SKATE is a gristly fish, with a flat, smooth, and very broad body. It grows to a very large size ; for some have been taken that have weighed above an hundred pounds: but what is still more extraordinary, there was one sold by a Fishmonger at *Cambridge*, to *St. John's College*, which weighed two hundred pounds, and dined one hundred and twenty persons. It was carefully measured, and the length was forty-two Inches, and the breadth thirty-one. Those of the size here mentioned are very coarse and rank, the finest being from twenty to forty pounds weight.

The colour on the upper part is a pale ash, very smooth spotted with black. The under part is white.

All fish of this sort, when first taken, have a rankish taste, which, by keeping a little, vanishes. They are most in season in the winter, for then they do not smell so strong, and their taste is more pleasant.

They delight to feed in muddy places not far from the shore. They are found in great plenty on all the sea coast of *Great Britain*.

SOAL.

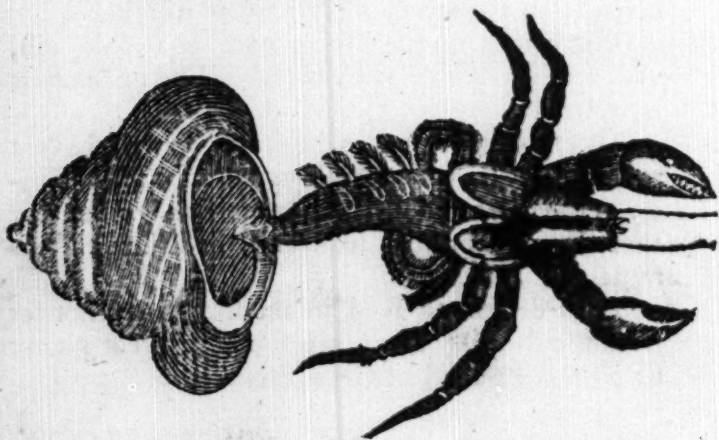


The Seal is a flat longish fish, in shape much like the Soal of a Shoe, from whence it derives its name. It is often seen of the length of a Foot, and sometimes a little longer. The upper part is of a dark Ash-colour, and the lower white.

They are caught in large quantities on the coast of *Devon* and *Cornwall*, from whence the markets of *London* are supplied by land-carriage.

The flesh is more firm and solid than that of a Plaice; and for sweetness of taste, the plenty of nourishment it affords, and the goodness of its juice, far excels it; for which reason, in some countries, they stile it the Sea-Partridge.

**SOLDIER-CRAB, or HERMIT.**



The **SOLDIER-CRAB** is about three or four  
Inche



Inches long. It has six feet, two of which are biters; one of the two is as broad as one's thumb, and shrinks up strangely when he is in his shell, to close the Mouth of it. All the rest of the Body is a sort of a Pudding, in a pretty rough thick skin.

They visit the sea coast once a year, to change their shells, which every one endeavours to fit himself with according to his size. As soon as this is done, they run backward into the shell, and thus clothed anew, and armed like Soldiers, they march back to the mountains, and take up their quarters among the rocks and the hollow trees.

They feed upon rotten leaves and fruit till they are so increased in bulk, that the shell becomes too strait for them, which obliges them to go down to the sea coast again to change their houses. The curious, who have been at the pains to observe them while they make this exchange, have been very much pleased with their manner of doing it; as they go along, they stop at every shell, to examine if it be fit for their purpose, and when they have met with one that they like, they immediately quit the old one, and run back so swiftly into the other, as if they were ashamed to be seen naked; though most probably it is to avoid the coldness of the air.

Sometimes it happens that two make choice of the same shell, and then this occasions a battle; for they will fight and bite each other, naked as they are, till one of them yields, and resigns the shell to the victor. When he has got possession of it, he takes three or four turns upon the shore, and if he likes it he keeps it, otherwise he betakes himself to his old one again, and goes and chooses another. This they sometimes do five or six times, till they can get one entirely to their liking.

SPRAT.

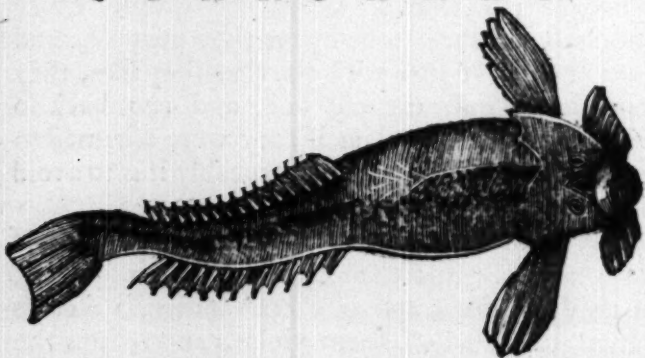
## S P R A T.



A SPRAT is so like a Herring in every particular, that, after the most diligent examination, the best Authors have concluded that there is no difference between them but their age.

They are taken annually in great plenty about the winter solstice, and, as it is well known, are not sold by number or weight, but measure, at a very low price. An old *Cornish* Fisherman, who was consulted in this affair, declared, that there are two kinds of Sprats usually met with upon that coast, one of which is young Pilchards, and the other young Herrings, which may be easily distinguished from each other: That the Pilchard kind travel no farther eastward than *Devonshire* and *Cornwall*; whereas the other are to be met with every where.

## S T A R - G A Z E R.



The STAR-GAZER is about ten or twelve Inches long. The Head is large, square, rough, and boney. The body is of a roundish make, ash-coloured on the upper part, and white on the lower.

lower. The Scales are so small, that some have affirmed he has none. The Face is flat, looking upwards, in which the Eyes are small, protuberant, of a gold-colour, and placed near together; besides, they look directly upwards, from whence he is called the Star-Gazer. The Mouth is large, and placed on the upper part of the Snout.

The flesh of the Star-Gazer is much commended by some, and disliked by others. He is often taken in the *Mediterranean Sea*.

STOCK-FISH is the Cod-fish, caught in extreme frost, in the north of *Norway*, bordering upon *Lapland*, where the Fishermen, cover over with Furs, make a hole in the Ice, let down their baited line, &c. After pulling up the fish, taking out the Entrails, &c. and washing off the slime, they throw it upon the rock, where it freezes and becomes as hard as a deal board, and never to be dissolved; this the Sailors beat to pieces, and often call it fresh fish, after it has been kept seven years, and worms have eat holes in it.

### SUCKING-FISH.



The SUCKING-FISH has a roundish body, about eighteen Inches long, and four thick. It has a triangular Mouth, the upper part of which is shorter than the lower. From the upper part of the Head to the middle of the Back, there is a gristly substance, of an oval form, like the Head or Mouth of a Shell-Snail, but harder. This Excreffence is about seven Inches long, five broad, and half an Inch high. It is full of small ridges, wherewith it will fasten itself to any thing at pleasure.

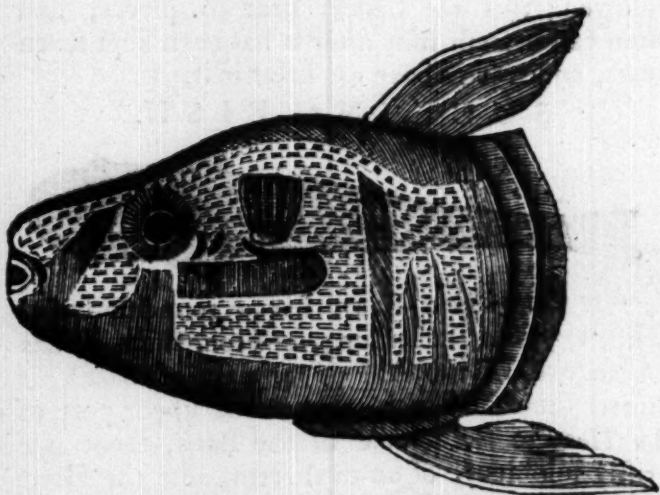
This

This fish usually attends upon ships, for the sake of any filth that is thrown out of it. In fine weather they will play about the ship; but when it blows hard, and consequently the ship sails very swift, they will stick to the bottom of it, from whence they are not to be removed either by the motion of the ship, or the beating of the waves, though the sea is ever so tempestuous.

Sometimes they take the advantage of sticking to some large fish or other, for they cannot swim very fast themselves. They often stick to a Shark, even after he is taken out of the water, and throws himself about violently on the deck of the ship for half an hour together; for a shark is a very strong unruly fish, and hard to be mastered.

The Sucking-fish is supposed to be the *Remora* of the ancients.

### S U N - F I S H.



The SUN-FISH has a broad short body, the hind part of which is covered with a circular fin, which serves instead of a tail, so that it seems to be the head of a fish, or at most the half of one, with

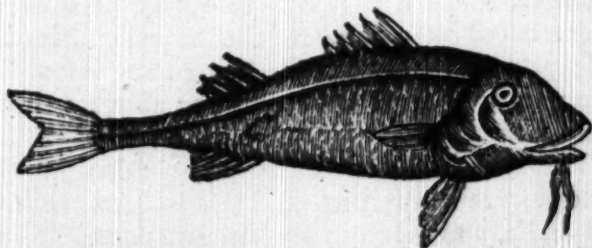
with the tail part cut off. It sometimes weighs near a hundred pounds. The ordinary size is above two feet long. He has no scales, but his skin is hard, thick, and rough; he is blackish on the back, and of a silver colour on the belly; both the belly and back terminate in a sharp ridge.

The flesh is exceeding soft; the bones are gristly, and soft likewise.

It is called the Sun-fish from the roundness of its body, or because it will shine in the night; however, this quality does not belong to this fish alone, but to several others.

This Fish is taken both in the *Mediterranean* and in the Ocean; sometimes likewise near *Penzance* in *Cornwall*.

## S U R M U L L E T.



The SURMULLET is from six to nine inches long; it has a thickish body, which gradually decreases in circumference to the end of the tail. The scales are large and come easily off. The colour is a dusky yellow.

This fish has always been esteemed a great rarity, and was so dear formerly, that it sold for its weight in silver; but now they are brought to the *London* Markets by Land carriage from the coast of *Devon*, *Cornwall*, and *Suffex*.

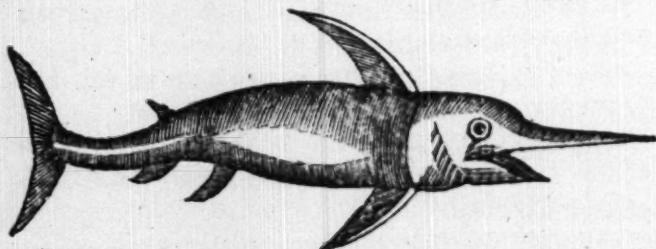
There is another fish of this kind, better known in *England* than the former, and is twice the size  
of



of it, for it sometimes grows to be fourteen inches long. It likewise differs from the former, in having the back fins beautifully painted with red and yellow; when those of the lesser sort are white, mixed with a pale yellow.

The Surmullet is very common in the *Mediterranean Sea*.

## S W O R D - F I S H.



The SWORD-FISH has a snout in the shape of a Sword, which is so remarkable, that he is every where called by a name of the same signification.

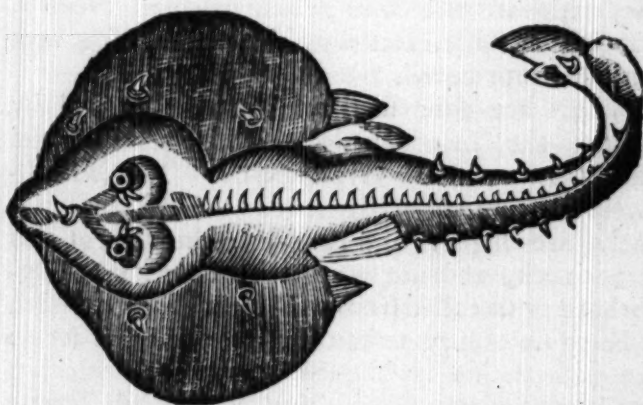
It grows to a large bulk, being sometimes fifteen feet in Length, and weighing above a hundred pounds.

The Sword-fish continues to be taken in the same place as it was formerly, that is, between *Italy* and *Sicily*, and much in the same manner. Their custom is to place watchmen on the high cliffs that hang over the Sea, whose business it is to observe the motion of the fish. As soon as they perceive any, they give notice to the boats below, by signs agreed upon, and direct them what course to take. As soon as they draw nigh, the fisherman who is used to the sport, climbs up a small mast placed in the boat for that purpose, that he may observe the motion of the fish which he designs to strike, at the same time directing the rowers which way to steer. When they have almost overtaken him, the Fisher immediately descends from the mast,  
and

and strikes a spear, or harping-iron into his body ; the handle of which, being loose in the Socket, he takes back, while the iron part, which is made fast to a long cord, remains in his body. The fish thus hampered, is suffered to flounce about till he is tired and faint. After this they either hoist him into the boat, or, if he is very large, tow him on shore.

The flesh is whiter than that of a Tunny, and is well enough tasted. It is not very easy of digestion, but it nourishes much. The people of *Messina* prefer it to Sturgeon.

## T H O R N B A C K .



The THORNBAC is in shape almost square, and yet a transverse line drawn from corner to corner is longer than one from the head to the root of the tail ; so that, in a sense, this fish is broader than it is long.

They are found in the like places as the Skate, and their flesh is much of the same taste, but is somewhat more hard of digestion.

TOR-

## TORTOISE, or TURTLE.



The TORTOISE is a kind of an amphibious Animal, living both by land and water : they are covered with a fine large oval shell, which is marbled with various colours ; their sizes are different, but they are often met with in *America* five feet long and four broad.

There are four sorts of Tortoises, called by Sailors, the Trunk-turtle, the Loggerhead, the Hawks-bill, and the Green-turtle. The Trunk-turtle are commonly bigger than the rest, and their backs are higher and rounder : the flesh of this sort is rank, and not very wholesome : the Loggerhead is so called from the largeness of its head, it being much bigger than those of the other sorts : the flesh of this is likewise rank, and not eaten but in case of necessity. The Hawks-bill Turtle is the least of the four, they have long and small mouths, sometimes resembling the bill of a Hawk ; on the back of this Turtle grows the shell that is so much esteemed in *Europe* for making Combs, Boxes, &c. Some of them carry three pounds, others which are very large, six pounds of Shell. It consists of thirteen leaves, or plates, of which eight are flat, and five hollow : they are raised and taken off by means of fire, which is made under it when the flesh is taken out ; as soon as the heat affects the leaves, they are easily raised with

with the point of a knife. The flesh is but ordinary food, but sweeter and better than that of the Loggerhead; yet sometimes it purges both upwards and downwards, especially between *Sambaloes* and *Porto-Bello*.

The Green-turtle are so called, because the shell is greener than any other. It is very clear, and better clouded than that of the Hawks-Bill; but it is so exceeding thin, it is used only for inlaying.—These Turtles are generally larger than the Hawks-Bill, and weigh sometimes two, sometimes three hundred pounds. Their Heads are round and small, and their Backs flatter than the Hawks-bill.

The Turtle is a dull, heavy, stupid Animal, their brain being no bigger than a small Bean, though their Head is as big as a Calf's; but they have a very good Eye, and a quick sight. Their flesh looks so like Beef, it would hardly be distinguished from it, if it was not for the colour of the fat, which is of a yellowish green.

They feed upon Moss, Grass, and Sea-weed, unless in the time of breeding, when they forsake their common haunts, and are supposed to eat nothing. Both the Male and Female are fat the beginning of this season. But before they return, the Male becomes so lean, that he is not fit to eat, while the Female continues in good plight, and eats well to the very last. They couple in the water, and are said to be nine days in performing the work. They begin in *March*, and continue till *May*.

This coupling time is one of the principal seasons of fishing for them. They are very easily discovered when they are in the action, the Male being upon the Back of the Female. As soon as they are perceived, two or three people approach them in a Canoe, and either slip a noose round  
their

their necks, or one of their feet; or if they have no line, they lay hold of them by the neck, where they have no shell, with their hands only, and by this means catch them both together; but sometimes the Female escapes, being more shy than the Male.

Another way of taking them, at this time, is with the spear; which being thrown at the Back of the Turtle, pierces the shell, and sticks as fast in it as if it were solid Oak. He struggles hard to get loose, but all to no purpose, for they take care that the line which is fastened to the spear be strong enough to hold him.

The time of taking Turtle upon land, is from the first Moon in *April* to that in *August*, being the season in which these creatures lay their Eggs. The quantity which they lay is prodigious, being at least several hundreds in one season. The night before she lays, she comes and takes a view of the place, and after taking one turn about it, she goes to sea again, but never fails to return the night following.

Towards the setting of the Sun, they are seen drawing to land, and seem to look earnestly about them, as if they feared an ambuscade. If they perceive any person on shore, they seek for another place; if otherwise, they come on shore when it is dark. After they have looked carefully about them, they begin to work and dig in the sand with their fore feet, till they have made a round hole, of a foot broad and a foot and a half deep, a little above where the water reaches when highest; this done they lay eighty or ninety Eggs, or upwards, at a time, as big as a Hen Egg, and as round as a ball; she continues laying about the space of an hour, during which time, if a Cart was to be driven over her, she would not stir. The Eggs are covered



covered with a white tough skin, like wetted Parchment. When she has done laying, she covers the whole so dextrously, that it is no easy matter to find the place: after this she returns to the sea. At the end of fifteen days she lays again in the same manner, and at the end of another fifteen likewise, laying three times in all.

In about twenty five days after laying, the eggs are hatched by the heat of the sand, at the end of which term, the little Turtles, being as big as young Quails, run directly to the sea, without any guide to lead them. Those that are taken by the way, are generally fried whole, and are said to be delicious meat.

The Men that stand to watch for the Turtle, turn them on their backs, which is not performed without some difficulty, for they are very heavy, and struggle hard. After this he hales them above high water mark, and leaves them till morning, for when they are once on their backs, they are not able to stir from the place.

As a Turtle enjoys the benefit of lungs, she can, by sucking in the air, bring herself to an Equilibrium with the water. She is also able to swim like other animals, by the motion of her paws, though most commonly she contents herself with creeping.

The Turtle, as was said before, feeds upon grass and weeds, and this she does on the land as well as in the water. Near several of the *American* Islands there are a sort of green meadows at the bottom of the sea, which is not many fathom deep in those parts; for which reason, when the weather is fine, and the water smooth, they may be seen creeping on this green carpet at the bottom of the sea. After they have fed sufficiently, they take their progress into the mouths of rivers  
for

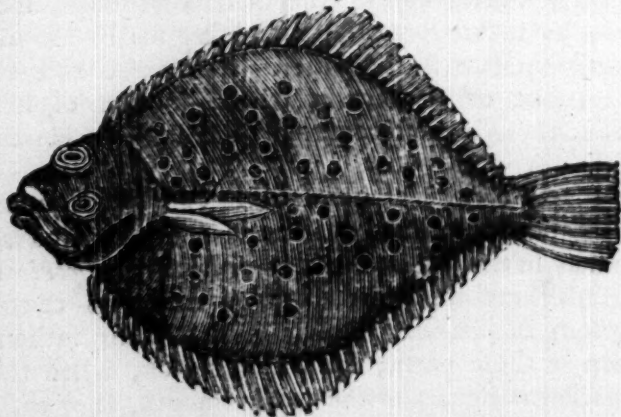
for fresh water, where they likewise take in the refreshing air, and then return to their former station. When they have done feeding, they generally float with their heads above water, unless they are alarmed by the approach of Hunters, or birds of prey, in which case they suddenly plunge to the bottom.

A Turtle of an ordinary size, and of the best sort, will yield at least two hundred pounds of flesh, which the Sailors take care to salt, and near three hundred eggs, which will keep a considerable time.

The shell may be fashioned in what manner the workman pleases, by softening it in warm water, and putting it into a mould; for it immediately takes the impression by the assistance of a strong iron press, and may be afterwards adorned and embellished at pleasure.

TUB-FISH. See GURNARD.

### T U R B O T, or B R E T.



This fish in the Southern parts of *England* is called a Turbot, but in the Northern a Bret.

The size of this fish seldom exceeds a yard in length,

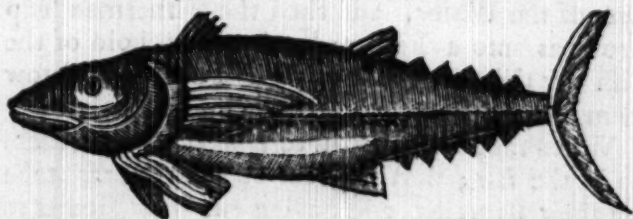
Length, not two Feet and a Half in Breadth. Though he has no Scales, he has a rough granulated Skin, full of exceeding small Prickles, placed without order on the upper Part. The Colour of the same Part is Ash, diversified with a great Number of black Spots. The lower Part is White.

The *London* Markets are wholly supplied with this Fish by the *Dutch*, who to the Scandal of the *British* Fishermen, it is computed, carry out of the Kingdom upwards of thirty thousand Pounds annually; and in the Space of three Months, beginning in *May*, and ending the End of *July*, or Beginning of *August*, they are chiefly to be found on the *Dogger-Bank*, but in the Months of *January*, *February* and *March*, they are to be had in pretty great Plenty on the Coast of *Devon* and *Cornwall*, of equal Goodness with those caught by the *Dutch*.

The Flesh is white, firm, delicate, and wholesome; and is so highly esteemed by some, as to be preferred before all the inhabitants of the Water.

It is a Fish of Prey, and lives upon others, particularly Crabs.

#### TUNNY, or SPANISH MACKEREL.



The TUNNY is a large heavy Fish, sometimes weighing upwards of a hundred pounds. His Body is round, long, and thick, but towards the Tail remarkably small; the Back is of a very dark Colour, and appears to have either a blue or greenish Cast, according to the Light it is placed in.

The Tunny is a Fish of Passage, that is, rambles

O

from

from one Part of the Sea to another at a considerable distance. In the Months of *September* and *October*, they leave the Ocean, and pass through the Streights of *Gibraltar* into the *Mediterranean* Sea towards the *Levant*; they swim in Shoals, and are often taken on the coast of *Cornwall* with their Stomachs full of Pilchards.

Both the Antients and the Moderns seem to think that their Place of Spawning is in the *Euxine* Sea, and that they traverse the *Mediterranean* for that Purpose.

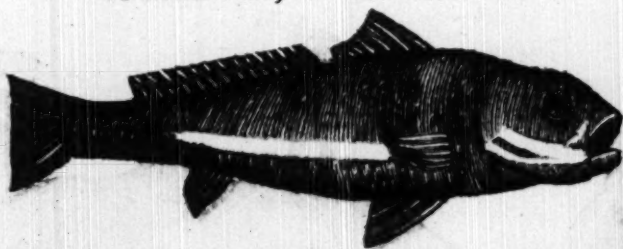
The time of Fishing begins in *September*; they are caught by a Contrivance made of small Cane, which the *French* call *Madrague*; some of these are said to be a mile in Compass. They are divided into several partitions, and the Fish having entered the large ones, are driven from thence into the smaller; for they are like Sheep, if one leads the Way, all the rest will follow. The inmost Partition of all is of a closer contexture than the rest, and it is floored as it were with a Net: when they take out the Fish, they draw it so near the Shore, that the bottom may be within five Feet of the Surface of the Water, and then the Fishermen leap into it as into a Fishpond; they lay hold of the Fish by the small part of their Tails, and throw them into the Boats where they immediately die.

When they are brought to Land they hang them up in the Air; then they cut off their Heads, take out their Entrails, and having cut their Bodies to Pieces, they broil them on large Gridirons, and fry them with Oil-olive: after this, they season them with Salt, Pepper, and Cloves, and a few Bay-leaves; then they put them into Barrels with fresh Oil-olive and a little Vinegar; and in this Manner they are transported, ready to eat, into different Parts of *Europe* by the Name of Sea-Tunny.

The

The Flesh of this Fish is not very delicate, but very useful. When it is cooked in the Foregoing Manner, and done with good Oil, it is as firm and white as Veal; and eats pretty much like it.

### UMBRANA, or OMBRINO.

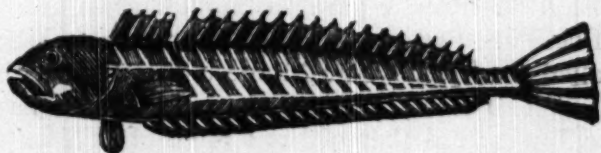


This Fish, in *Italy*, is called UMBRANA, or OMBRINO, and is chiefly known in *England*, by being the Subject of several diverting Scenes in one of *Beaumont and Fletcher's* Plays.

In Colour it resembles a Tench, but the Shape is more like a Pearch.

This Fish is in the highest Esteem among the *Italians*, and is thought to make a Repast worthy of a Prince. They are often seen in the Markets in *Rome*; but in other Places it is a very great Rarity.

### W E E V E R.



The WEEVER has a longish Body and a straight Back. The Sides are painted with yellow and brown Lines, which run obliquely from the Back towards the Belly.

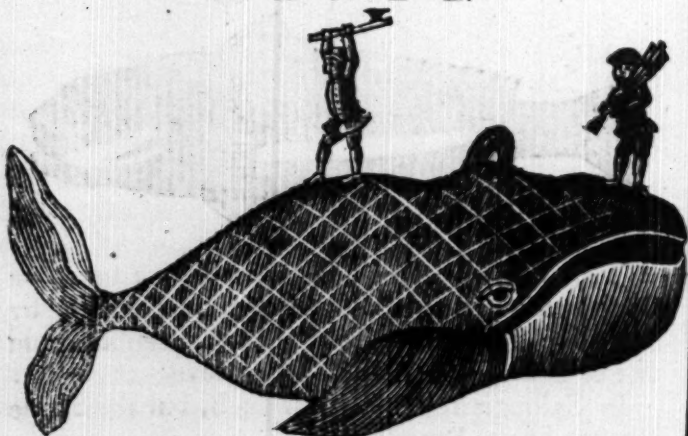
He is oftentaken a Foot and a half long. The Flesh is firm, and eats agreeable enough.

The Fin on the Back, next the Head, is said to



be pisonous ; and if a Fisher happen to be wounded with it, the Part swells, and is very full of Pain, which continues very intense for four or five Hours, and then abates.

## W H A L E.



The WHALE is by far the largest of all the Inhabitants of the Sea, and is chiefly caught in the *North-Sea*. Some of those taken at *Spitzberg* amount to two hundred Feet in Length. Those on the Coast of *America* are about ninety, or an hundred ; and those on the Coast of *Guienne*, and in the *Mediterranean*, are the smallest of all.

There are two sorts of Whales, one of which is called *Cachelot*, whose Mouth is furnished with little flat Teeth ; whereas the true Whale has none, but instead thereof has a Kind of Whiskers in his Throat about a Span broad, and fifteen Feet long, ending in a Sort of Fringe like Hogs Bristles ; they are set in the Palate, and do in some Measure the office of Teeth. Of these Whiskers, cut into a proper Breath, is made Whalebone, which the Generality erroneously think is taken from the Fins of this monstrous Fish.

The

The Whale, properly so called, has likewise no Fins on his Back, but has two behind his Eyes, of a Bigness proportionable to the Bulk of the Whale; they are covered with a thick black Skin, curiously marbled with white Strokes, which look like Veins in a Piece of Wood. When these Fins are cut up, there appear Bones underneath, resembling a Man's Hand; there likewise appear between them very stiff Sinews, which are so hard that they will rebound if slung against the Ground. These are all the Fins that a Whale has, and with these he steers himself as if a Boat was rowed with Oars.

The Tail does not stand upright as the Tail of almost every other Fish, but lies in a horizontal Position, and is about six or eight Yards broad. The Head is the third Part of the Length of the Fish, and on the Fore-part of the upper and under Lip there are short Hairs. The Lips are crooked somewhat like an *s*, on the uppermost of which there are black Streaks mixed with brown. Their Lips are smooth and quite black, and when they are shut they lock one within the other.

The Whale-bone, as we term it, is, as was observed before, in his Mouth and Throat; of this the middlemost Pieces are the longest; there are about five hundred of them in all, and between every one there is room enough to put one's Hand.

In the Midst of these Pieces lie the Tongue, which is large and white, but on the Edges spotted with black: It consists of a soft spongy Fat, which cannot easily be cut, for which Reason they sling it away.

On the Top of the Head, and before the Eyes, is placed what they call the Hovel, or Bump, in which are two Spout-Holes. Out of these Holes he blows the Water so very fiercely, that it roars like a hollow Wind, or an Organ-Pipe: It is so

very loud that it may be heard at the Distance of a League, when the Whale is not to be seen by Reason of the foggy Air. He blows out the Water the fiercest of all when he is wounded, and then the Noise resembles the Roaring of the Sea in a great Storm.

The Head of the Whale is not round at the Top, but flat, and slopes downward like the Tiling of a House, till it comes to the under Lip. In short, the whole Fish is shaped like a Shoemaker's Last, if you look on it from beneath.

His Eyes are placed near the Corner of the Mouth, and are not much bigger than those of an Ox. They have Eye-lids, and Hair upon them, like the Eyes of a Man. The Crystalline Humour is not much bigger than a Pea, and is clear, white, and transparent.

His Back and Sides are quite red, but underneath the Belly they are commonly white; though some are of a Jet Black.

They make a beautiful Appearance in the Water when the Sun shines; for as the Waves of the Sea rise up, and are dashed against him, they shine like Silver. Some of them are marbled on the Back and Tail, and wherever they are wounded there always remains a white Scar.

Those Whales that are black are not so in an equal Degree; for some are deeply black as Velvet, others as a Coal, and others again are of the Colour of a Tench.

The Skin of this Fish is almost as slippery as that of an Eel, but this does not hinder a Man from standing upon him, because the Flesh being soft, sinks downward with his Weight, and makes a Sort of a Hole. The outward or Scarf-skin is as thin as Parchment, and is easily taken off with one's Hands when the Fish is hot; but it is of little or no Use.

The

The *Penis* of the Whale is of a tendinous Nature, and is six, seven, or eight Feet long, according to the Bigness of the Fish: It lies in a Doubling of the Skin, just like a Knife in the Sheath when the Haft only appears. The *Pudendum* of the Female is shaped like that of a Mare, or Cow. On each Side of it grow two Udders with Nipples, like those of a Cow; some of these are all over white, some are speckled with black and blue Spots, like a Lapwing's Egg. When they have no young ones their Udders are small. In the Act of Coition they stand upright with their Heads out of the Water, embracing each other with their Fins.

It is supposed they never have more than two young ones at a time, because there have never been found more than two in their Bellies when they have been cut open. How long they go with Young, is altogether uncertain.

In the Year 1658 a Skeleton of a Whale was publicly shewn at *Paris*. The Skull was between sixteen and seventeen Feet long, and weighed 4600 Pounds.

The Flesh is coarse and hard, looking like that of a Bull, and is full of Sinews: It is very dry and lean when it is boiled, because the Fat of a Whale lies only between the Flesh and the Skin. Some Parts of it look blue and green, like powdered Beef, especially at the joining together of the Muscles. The Tail is the tenderest Part, and is not so dry as that of the Body. It may be eaten safely, when there is nothing better to be got; for those that have eaten of it daily have found no bad Effects from it.

The Drug called *Sperma Ceti*, is the Brain of the *Cachelot*, or Male Whale, which, when it is taken out of the Skull, is melted over a gentle  
O 4 Fire;

Fire; then it is cast into Moulds, like those in which Sugar is refined; after it is cooled, and drained from the Oil, they take it and melt it again, repeating the Operation till it is well purified, and very white. Then with a Knife, made for that Purpose, they cut it into Flakes, in the same Manner as it appears when it comes to us.

The chief Place where Whales are caught, is on the Western Coast of *Spitzberg*, from the Latitude of 76 Degrees 40 Minutes, to 80 Degrees; the Establishment at *Greenland* not succeeding to Satisfaction.

The *Dutch* have upwards of three hundred Years had a large Share of the Whale-Fishery, and it is now esteemed one of the principal Branches of their extensive Trade. The chief Merchants of their flourishing Provinces associate themselves into a Body for the carrying it on, and send every Year a Fleet of Vessels to the *North Seas* for that Purpose.

In the Year 1728 the *South Sea Company* began to share with them, in which they met with pretty good Success at first; but it afterwards dwindled away till the Year 1740, when the Parliament thought fit to give farther Encouragement in it, by which Means we are become powerful Rivals of the *Dutch*, and now sell both Oil and Whale-bone to several Parts of the World.

That the Reader may be a Judge of the Importance of this Trade, we shall here subjoin the Discipline observed in the Whale-Fishery, the Method of Fishing, the Cargo and Equipage of a Vessel, and the Produce thereof.

The Discipline is adjusted by standing Regulations, the principal of which are as follow:

That in case a Vessel be ship-wrecked, and the Crew saved, the next Vessel they meet with shall take



take them in, and the second Vessel half of them from the first; but no Ship is obliged to take in any of the Cargo of the ship-wrecked Vessel: But if any Goods, taken out of such a Vessel, are absolutely relinquished, and another Ship finds them, and takes them up, the Captain shall be accountable to the Owners of the ship-wrecked Vessels for one half, clear of all Expences. If the Crew desert a ship-wrecked Vessel, they shall have no Claim to any of the effects saved, but the whole shall go to the Proprietor; but if they be present when the Effects are saved, and assist therein, they shall have One Fourth thereof: That if a Person kill a Fish on the Ice, it shall be reputed his own so long as he leaves any Person with it; but the Minute he leaves it, it becomes the Due of the first Captain that comes that Way. But yet if the Fish be fastened to an Anchor, or a Rope fastened to the Shore, it shall remain to its first Proprietor, though he leaves it alone: That if any Person be wounded or maimed in the Service, the Commissioners of the Fishery are to procure him a reasonable Satisfaction, to which the whole Fleet shall contribute.

They likewise agree to attend Prayers Morning and Evening, on Pain of a Forfeit at the Discretion of the Captain; nor to get drunk, or draw their Knives, on Forfeiture of half their Wages; nor fight, on Forfeiture of the Whole. They are not to lay Wagers on the good or ill Success of the Fishing, nor buy nor sell with the Condition of taking one or more Fish, on the Penalty of twenty-five Florins. They are likewise to rest satisfied with the Provisions allowed them; and they are never to light Candle, Fire, or Match, without the Captain's Leave, on the like Penalty.

After the reading this Regulation, the Crew are all called over, who receive the customary Gratuity

tuity before their setting out, with an Assurance of another at their Return, in Proportion to the Success of the Voyage.

The Captain, on this Occasion, receives from an hundred to an hundred and fifty Florins: The Pilot from forty to sixty: Each Harpineer from forty to fifty: The other Officers from twenty-six to thirty-six Florins: The old Sailors twenty, and the young ones twelve.

The Fleet, which consists chiefly of Vessels from two to three hundred Tons, and from thirty-five Men to forty-one, usually sets sail about the beginning of *April*, and takes its Course by the Islands of *Iceland*, from 60 to 61 Degrees of Latitude; after which, leaving them to the West, it steers Northward through 73, 74, and 75 Degrees of Latitude, where they begin to find the Ice.

It is through these prodigious Heaps of Ice, which abound in those Parts, that they first begin to spy the Whales, and there most of the Vessels make a Stop in order for Fishing. But as the Fish are larger and fatter the further they go North, for that Reason some Vessels will venture as far as eighty or eighty-two Degrees.

Each Vessel of three hundred Tons has six Shaloops, each Shaloon is allowed a Harpineer, and five Sailors to row it; in each Shaloon there are seven Lines of three Inches Circumference, five of them in the fore Part of the Vessel, and two behind. The five Lines together make six hundred Fathom, and with the Addition of the other two, the whole amounts to eight hundred and fifty Fathom. If the Whale dives deeper, or runs further under the Ice, the Line must be cut, to prevent the Loss of the Boat.

The Instrument wherewith the Execution is done is a Harping-iron, or Javelin, five or six Feet long,

long, pointed with Steel in a triangular Shape, like the Barb of an Arrow.

The Harpineer, standing at one End of the Sloop, as soon as he is at a proper Distance from the Whale, flings the Harping-iron, with all the Force he is Master of, against the Whale's Back, and if he is so lucky as to penetrate through the Skin and Fat into the Flesh, he lets go a String fastened to the Harping-iron, at the End whereof is a dry Gourd, which swimming on the Water discovers whereabouts the Whale is, who, as soon as he is struck, plunges to the Bottom. The Gourd is made use of when they have not Line enough to pursue the Whale in its Career. However, great Care is taken that they may have Line enough; and if the Cargo of one Shallop is not sufficient, they throw the End of the Cord to another, and from thence to another, if there should be Occasion. The Cord in running out so swiftly would often take Fire, if it was not kept wetting with a Mop or a Swab.

As soon as the Whale rises again for Breath, the Harpineer gives him a fresh Wound with a Launce, and so do the rest of the Crew, as they have an Opportunity; for when he begins to faint with the Loss of Blood, they can approach near him, and then they plunge their Launces into various Parts of his Body, which soon dispatch him. When the Carcase begins to float, they cut off the Fins and Tail, and tow him to the Ship, where they fasten Ropes to keep him from sinking, and when it is cold they begin to cut it up.

In order to this, three or four Men go down upon the Whale, with Irons upon their Boots to keep them from slipping. They begin to open him on the Side, and proceed downwards towards the Belly, cutting off all the Fat into Pieces of  
three

three Feet broad, and eight long: besides the Fat on the Sides, they frequently cut off that on the Throat and the under Lip, leaving the Lean behind. They next proceed to the Whalebone, which they cut off, with a Hatchet made for that Purpose, from the upper Jaw of the Fish. The Fat and Bone thus procured; they leave the Carcase for the Bears, who are very fond of it.

As fast as the large Pieces of Fat are cut off, the rest of the Crew are employed in slicing them smaller, and picking out the Lean.

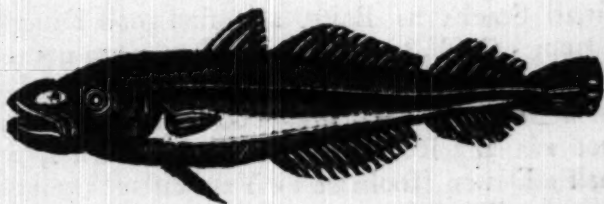
When this is prepared, they stow it under Deck till the Fat of all the Whale is onboard; then cutting it still smaller, they put it up in Tubs in the Hold, or Bottom of the Vessel, cramming them very full and close; this done, they sail home-wards, where the Fat is to be boiled, and melted down into Train Oil.

As to the Produce of this Fishery, it is different in different Years. In 1697, the most fortunate Year that ever was known, one hundred and ninety-seven Vessels took one thousand nine hundred sixty-eight Whales. Whereas, in 1725, there were two hundred and twenty-six Vessels, which only took three hundred and forty-nine. Of these Vessels, twelve were *English*, which caught to their Share twenty-five Whales and a Half; the Produce of these were, one thousand Puncheons of Blubber, and twenty Tons of Whale-bone.

Now supposing a Puncheon of Blubber to be worth two Pounds fifteen Shillings, as it was to the *Dutch* in 1697; and an hundred Weight of Whale-bone to be worth four Pounds four Shillings, the amount of both Articles will be three thousand five hundred and ninety Pounds for the whole Year's Produce; and the Value of the Produce to the whole Number of Ships were three hundred

hundred forty-six thousand seven hundred and forty-four Pounds ten Shillings.

## W H I T I N G .



The WHITING is one of the smallest of this Kind of Fish, it being seldom met with above a Foot in Length. It is a slender Fish for the Size, especially towards the Tail, for about the Head the Make is considerably larger.

The Flesh is sweet, tender, and in universal Esteem. In some Parts of *England* and *Holland*, they take out the Guts of these Fish, and then dry them, by which Means they may be kept a considerable Time. They eat pretty enough.

There is another Sort of Whiting, not above seven Inches long, which is very common in the *Mediterranean Seas*, and is called by the *Venetians*, *Mollo*, but by the People of *Marsailles*, *Capelan*. It is doubted by some whether they are found in the Ocean or not; and yet it is probable that this is the same Fish which our Countrymen corruptly call *Capeling*, and which they catch upon the *American Coast* for a Bait in Cod-fishing. It is of a darker Colour than a common Whiting, and has a Barb at its Nose like a Cod. The Flesh is very soft, tender, and nourishing.

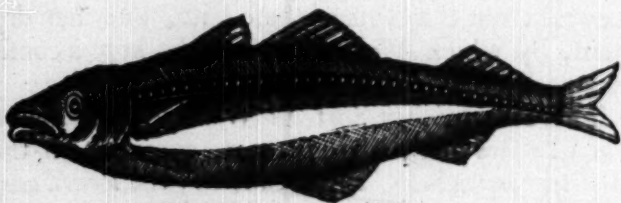
The Fishing for Whitings in a Boat or Snack is diverting enough, because they bite very freely, and require no very nice Tackle to catch them. You may know where to cast Anchor by the Sea-Gulls, for they never fail to hover over the Place  
where



where the Whittings lie, and if they seem to dip into the Water every now and then, you are sure not to loose your Labour.

At *Portsmouth*, the Tradesmen frequently get small Smelts as Baits, and find good Diversion amongst the Whittings; but if Smelts are not to be had, a Muscle, a Herring, a hairy Worm, a Lob, or a Marsh Worm, are good Baits. You need not use any Rod, but a *Pater-noster* Line, with half a Dozen Hooks half a Yard distant from each other. The Line may be fastened to the Inside of the Boat, by which Means you will have but little Trouble, except in drawing up your Fish, and putting on fresh Baits. The Time of waiting before you examine your Hooks need not be long, for they are a very greedy Fish.

#### WHITING-POLLACK.



This Fish has the *English* Name of WHITING-POLLACK bestowed upon it, from its Likeness to a Whiting. However, it is larger, proportionably broader, and not quite so thick.

He lives upon Fish, particularly Sand-Eels, and is frequently taken near *Penzance* and *St. Ives*, in *Cornwall*; and is likewise often caught in Rock-fishing. He struggles hard for his Life, and yields the Angler good Diversion.

Proper Baits in Rock-fishing, are small Smelts, a live Shrimp, a Cockle, a Perriwinkle, a Lob-worm, a Marsh-worm and a hairy Worm, that is found under the Sand at the Tide of Ebb. This last,

last, as it is the most natural, so it is the most successful Bait; besides it has this Advantage, that it needs no scowering, as other Worms do.

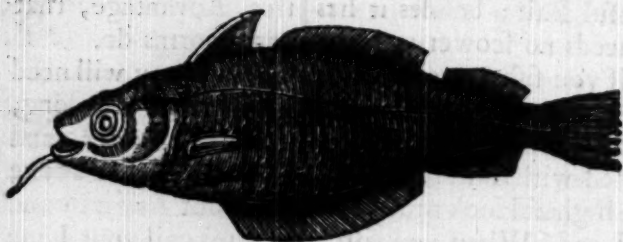
If you fish out of a Boat or Smack you will need no Rod, and your Line may be sixty Yards long, with three or four Hooks one above another, and baited with different Baits. Some Inches above the highest Hook must be fixed about half a Pound of Lead. When you fish, you must coil your Line in several Rings in your Left Hand, and holding your Lead in your Right, throw it as far into the Sea as you can, taking Care to hold the Loop of your Line fast in your Hand, lest you lose it.

The best Time for Sea-fishing is in warm Weather, and early in the Morning, or after Sun-set, provided the Tide has been ebbing near an Hour.

Some in this Kind of Fishing choose to place themselves under the Covert of a Rock, where they shelter themselves, and sit secure from the Inclemencies of the Wind and Weather, and this, in a proper Sense, may be termed Rock-fishing. In this Case a Rod is necessary, as likewise a Float. It is common to use two Hooks, one to lie at the Bottom, and one to hang about Mid-water; and if a little mischievous Fish, called a Miller's Thumb, should happen to carry your Bait into the Clefts of the Rocks, you must have Patience till he thinks proper to come abroad, for there is no dealing with him by Force.

The Flesh of a Whiting-Pollack is well tasted, nourishing, and flaky like that of a Cod.

## WHITING-POUT.



The WHITING-POUT is remarkably broad in Proportion to its Length, by which it is distinguished from all other Fish of this Kind.

The Size of this Fish is generally about eleven Inches long, and three and a half broad. It has small Scales, and is of a silver Colour on the Body like a Whiting.

This is a different Species from the Whiting-Mops; the Whiting-Mops being very young Whittings.

The Whiting-Pout is of a dry, insipid Taste, and very little esteemed.

F I N I S.